أ. فاضل سالم القصاب

مساعد الطالب رابع أعدادي

الكورس الثاني



THE WAY TEACHING IS MEANT TO BE

FADHIL ALQASSAP

مكتب الإستنساخ: السنديان / مقابل صيدلية كركوك/ كراج الشمال/ موصل

مواقع التواصل

- صفحة الفيس: الأستاذ فاضل القصاب / أستاذ لغة انكليزية
- تلكرام:fadhilaqassap@
- يوتيوب: أستاذ فاضل / أستاذ لغة انكليزية

Describing people – page 48 – وصف الاشخاص

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Digital camera	كاميرا رقمية	sensible	معقول / حساس	wavy	شعر مموج
slim	نحيل	reliable	موثوق بها	bald	أصلع
overweight	بدين	forgetful	كثير النسيان	smart	ذكي
bright	ذكي	Dark-complexioned	داكن البشرة	lively	بحيوية
twin	توأم	foolish	اناني	face	وجه
relationship	علاقة	Appearance	مظهر	Character	شخصية
birthday	عيد الميلاد	Uncle	عم / خال	well-dressed	حسن الملبس
supposed	مفترض	picture	صورة	university	جامعة

صوت 52

Answer: Noor has one twin sister. Check understanding of twin. mother, father, brother, uncle, aunt, cousin and niece.

❖ Describe appearance and character. صف المظاهر والشخصية

فاعل + is/are+ very + صفة

- نستخدم very و really قبل الصفات لتقوية الصفة أكثر

- Rasha is very sensible
- She is very bright

فاعل + looks + very + صفة

- Amal looks very smart

فاعل + is/are+ a bit / quite + صفة

- نستخدم quite و bit a للتقليل من حدة الصفة بمعنى للتكلم بشكل أكثر تهذيبا (نفس ما تم اخده في الثالث متوسط)

- I am a bit forgetful
- She is quite short

❖ present perfect simple and continuous المضارع التام والمستمر

التوسع بالشرح لعدم امكانيتي في شرحه في الكورس الأول فالان سأتوسع واراجع ما تم شرحه عن الزمنين في الكورس الاول

❖ present perfect simple المضارع التام

	form الشكل(الصيغة)	example مثال
مثبت affirmative	I, we, you, they / He, she, it (فاعل) + have / has + p.p(تصرف ثالث)	He has left the school
نفي negative	I, we, you, they / He, she, it (فاعل) + haven't / hasn't + p.p(تصرف ثالث)	He hasn't left the school
question سؤال	Have / has + I, we, you, they / He, she, it (فاعل) + p.p(تصرف ثالث) …?	Has He left the school?
مع أدوات الاستفهام	أداة الاستفهام + have/has + فاعل + p.p ….?	What has he left?

❖ Uses الاستخدامات

1. Use the present perfect simple when you want to show the effect of a past action on the present.
استخدم المضارع التام البسيط عندما تريد إظهار تأثير فعل سابق على الحاضر. (التركيز ليس على الوقت وانما النتيجة)
   - He has left the school. (He is no longer at the school.)
   - He hasn't studied for the exam. (He probably won't get a good mark.)

2. Use the present perfect simple with for or since to talk about something that started in the past and is still true.
استخدم المضارع التام البسيط مع لمدة أو منذ للحديث عن شيء بدأ في الماضي ولا يزال صحيحًا.

❖ Since منذ and for لمدة (مراجعة للثانى متوسط)

- Since +
  1. كلمات الوقت (July/ august /last year / last month / last week)
  2. (لحظة بدء الحدث) وقت ثابت في الماضي (2001 / my family moved from Kirkuk/ he came to Iraq)
  3. جُمل سلسلة كلمات مع فعل (I was a baby / I was born)

- for +
  1. عبارات (a long time / ages, years)
  2. مدة من الزمن)ten years / many years / two weeks / three ours)
  3. عدد من السنوات / الشهور / الأيام / الاسابيع

لاحظ الجدول التالي للفهم أكثر

since	for
2001 / 4 o'clock	رقم + years / 2 hours
July / august / last month/ last year / last week	Three weeks / two years / many years
Clauses / I was a baby / I was born / my family moved from / he came to	a long time / ages, years

- How long have you been in this school?
- I've been in this school since (2001).

- How long has your family lived in Basra?
- I've lived here for 14 years.
- I've lived here since my family moved from Kirkuk.

❖ شكل الأسئلة عن (since / for)

1. I've lived in our house (<u>for</u> / since) five years.
2. My father has lived in town (<u>since</u> / for) he came to Iraq.
3. My family have lived in our house (<u>for</u> / since) many years.
4. He has lived here (<u>for</u>/ since) five years. (He still fives here.)

3. Use the present perfect simple to talk about something that has happened recently. (recent past)
استخدم المضارع التام البسيط للحديث عن شيء حدث مؤخرًا. (الماضي القريب)
   - Sue has a tan. Has she just come back from her holiday?
   - Would you like something to eat? No, thanks. I have already eaten.

4. When we say exactly when something happened, we use the past simple, not the present perfect.
عندما نقول بالضبط متى حدث شيء ما، فإننا نستخدم الماضي البسيط، وليس المضارع التام. (هذه الفكرة نفسها موجودة في سادس أعدادي)

We came back from our holiday yesterday.
عندما نحدد الوقت في الماضي وخاصة باستخدام (yesterday, last, ago) فأن هذه أحد قواعد التكلم في الماضي البسيط
المضارع التام لا يحدد أي وقت في الماضي القاعدة هنا تتناقض مع الماضي البسيط (تابع مع شكل الأسئلة حتى من السادس اعدادي)

❖ شكل الأسئلة (عن تناقض الماضي البسيط والمضارع التام) مهم سادس اعدادي أيضا

1. **Adam has come back from Beirut yesterday. (correct the sentence)**
   Adam <u>came</u> back from Beirut yesterday
2. **Muna (gets/ <u>got</u>) married to Ghassan two years <u>ago</u>.**
3. **What time (have they gone) to bed last night? (correct)**
   What time Did they go to bed **last night?**
4. **What time they have gone to bed last night? (correct the sentence)**
   What time did they go to bed **last night**?
5. **We have all been to the park last weekend. (Correct the sentence)**
   we all went to the park **last weekend**.
6. **What time have you come home yesterday? (Correct the sentence)**
   what time did you come home **yesterday**?

❖ المضارع التام مع (ever/never/yet/already)

❖ ever/never (life experience) خبرات الحياة

Use ever and never to ask a question or make a negative sentence about any time in the past.

استخدم أبدًا/مطلقا (وابدا في أي وقت/ دائما)، لطرح سؤال أو عمل جملة سلبية عن أي وقت في الماضي.

- **Ever مع الجمل الاستفهامية**
- **Have you <u>ever</u> travelled by plane? (Have you travelled by plane at any time in your life?)**
- **Never لعمل جمل منفية**
- **He has <u>never</u> left Basra. (He has lived in Basra all his life.)**

Use the present perfect with ever and never. Put ever or never before the past participle.

استخدم المضارع التام مع never / ever. ضع never أو ever قبل الماضي التام للفعل (التصريف الثالث للفعل).

have/has + فاعل + never + p.p ….

- **Have you <u>ever</u> been to Egypt?**

فاعل + have/has + never + p.p …..

- **He has <u>never</u> seen the Pyramids.**

❖ yet

Use yet to make a negative sentence or a question when you think it is possible something has happened or will happen soon.

استخدم yet لعمل جملة منفية أو سؤال عندما تعتقد أنه من المحتمل حدوث شيء ما أو سيحدث قريبًا.

- **He has come back to Karbala, but we haven't seen him <u>yet</u>. (We will probably see him soon.)**
- **Has Nadia finished her homework <u>yet</u>? (It's very possible that Nadia has finished her homework.)**

Use the present perfect with yet. Always put yet at the end of the sentence or question.

استخدم المضارع التام مع yet. دائمًا ضع yet في نهاية الجملة أو السؤال.

- **They haven't taken the boat ride <u>yet</u>.**
- **Have you picked up the brochures <u>yet</u>?**

❖ Already

Use already to make a positive sentence or a question about something that you didn't think had happened or would happen soon.

استخدمه already لتكوين جملة إيجابية أو سؤال حول شيء لا تعتقد أنه حدث أو سيحدث قريبًا.

- **Ramzi has already come home. (We thought he would come home later.)**
- **Has the film started already? (I thought it would start later.)**

Use the present perfect with already. Put already before the past participle or at the end of the sentence.

استخدم المضارع التام مع already. ضع already قبل النعت الماضي أو في نهاية الجملة.

- **I've already made a reservation.**
  or
- **I've made a reservation already.** في نهاية الجملة هنا للتأكيد
- **Have you already packed your suitcase?**
  or
- **Have you packed your suitcase already?**

❖ توسع لفهم التناقض في استخدام already وyet

1. ALREADY is used in affirmative sentences and YET in negative sentences

يستخدم already في الجمل المثبتة وyet في الجمل المنفية

- **I haven't seen the Pyramids yet.**
- **I have already seen the Pyramids.**
-

2. already and yet at the end of the sentence. (with question)

Already و yet في نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية

Yet and Already to make a question when you think it is possible something has happened or will happen soon.

Yet و Already لطرح سؤال عندما تعتقد أنه من الممكن حدوث شيء ما أو سيحدث قريبًا.

Have you picked up the brochures yet? (مجرد سؤال لمعرفة ما اذا قام بذلك ام بعد)
He has made a reservation already. (تأكيد لدهشتنا لقيامه بذلك)

❖ شكل الأسئلة

- **He has (never/never) seen the Pyramids.** الجملة مثبتة
- **Have you (ever/never) been to Egypt?** الجملة استفهامية
- **Have you picked up the brochures (yet/never)? Yet** في نهاية الجملة
- **Has the film started (already/ever)?**

- **be / to Mosul (write a question with ever) Have you ever been to Mosul?**
- **Tariq has been to Egypt. (Rewrite using never/ be)**
  He has never been to England.

❖ present perfect continuous المضارع التام المستمر

	form (الصيغة)الشكل	example مثال
مثبت affirmative	I, we, you, they / He, she, it (فاعل) + have / has + been + V(ing)	She has been studying.
نفي negative	I, we, you, they / He, she, it (فاعل) + haven't / hasn't + been + V(ing)	She hasn't been studying.
question سؤال	Have / has + I, we, you, they / He, she, it (فاعل) + been + V(ing)…?	has She been studying?
مع أدوات الاستفهام	أداة الاستفهام + have/has + فاعل + been + V(ing) ….?	What has She been doing?

1. Use the present perfect continuous when you want to describe an action that started in the past which hasn't finished and/or took a long time. (unfinished action) (the same use of present perfect simple)

1. استخدم المضارع التام المستمر عندما تريد وصف حدث أو فعل بدأ في الماضي ولم ينته و / أو استغرق وقتًا طويلاً. (عمل غير مكتمل) (نفس استخدام المضارع التام البسيط)

- I have been working here for three years. (How long have been working here?)
- Have you been studying English for long?
- I have been waiting for an hour.
- I've been living in Mosul for two years.
- I've been living in Mosul since 2019.

2. Use the present perfect continuous to say what you have been doing. (finished actions)
Actions which recently stopped (though the whole action can be unfinished) and have a result, which we can often see, hear, or feel, in the present. We don't use a time word here. (indefinite)

2. استخدم المضارع التام المستمر لتقول ما كنت تفعله. (حدث منتهي)
الفعل او الحدث الدي توقف مؤخرًا (على الرغم من أن الفعل أو الحدث بأكمله يمكن أن يكون غير مكتمل) ولها نتيجة، والتي غالبًا ما نراها أو نسمعها أو نشعر بها في الوقت الحاضر. نحن لا نستخدم كلمة زمنية هنا. بمعني غير محدد في الماضي لان المحدد في الماضي يكون ماضي بسيط

- Have you been cooking? it smells good.
- I'm so tired, I've been studying.
- I've been running, so I'm really hot.
- Since I arrived in Rome, I have been visiting museums every day.

➢ Again, similar use with present perfect simple.
The present perfect simple focuses on the result of the action,
whereas the present perfect continuous focuses on the action itself.

مرة أخرى، استخدام مشابه مع المضارع التام البسيط.
يركز المضارع التام البسيط على نتيجة الفعل،
بينما يركز المضارع التام المستمر على الفعل نفسه.

- I'm so tired, I've been studying. (the focus is on the action(studying)
- I have lost my keys. (so, I can't start my car) the focus is on the result.

مقارنة بين الزمنين للفهم أكثر للتحدث بهما	
present perfect simple مضارع تام بسيط	**present perfect continuous مضارع تام مستمر**
Focuses on the result (the action is completed) **يركز على النتيجة (اكتمل الفعل او الحدث)**	**Focuses on the activity (the action itself)** **يركز على النشاط (الفعل نفسه)**
I have missed my plane home. He has left the school. (He is no longer at the school.)	I'm so tired, I've been studying.
Describes a completed action **يصف حدثا مكتمل**	**Describes an activity which may continue** **يصف نشاطًا قد يستمر**
We have brought too much luggage on this trip. I have eaten lunch. so, let's go out. I have painted the room. Would you like to see it?	He has been walking in the park since twelve o'clock. I have been living in Basra since 2018.
Says 'How many' 'How much' **يقول "كم للعدد" "كم للكمية"**	**Says 'how long'** **يقول "كم من الوقت"**
We have seen three museums in three days. She has drunk too much coffee today.	I have been working here for three years.
	When we can see evidence of recent activity **عندما نتمكن من رؤية دليل على نشاط حديث**
	I'm so tired, I've been studying. I've been running, so I'm really hot. Have you been cooking? it smells good.
	emphasize that something is temporary **يؤكد أن شيئًا ما مؤقت**
	I have been staying in a very nice hotel. I don't want to go home. I have been studying a lot recently.

A page 72 53 صوت Listen again and look at the photos in your Student's Book. Match the people with words from the box to show each person's relationship to Noor.

twin توأم sister اخت cousin إبن العم أو الخال mother أم uncle خال/عم father أب cousin niece ابنة الاخ

1 Adel uncle
2 Mahmoud father
3 Mariam mother
4 Reem aunt
5 Basma cousin
6 Rania cousin
7 Amal niece
8 Rasha twin sister

B page 72 Copy the chart into your vocabulary notebook, then write the words from the box in the correct columns. Write more words you know in each column.

مهم

Overweight بدين bight ذكي smart ذكي wavy شعر متموج lively حيوي sensible حساس
reliable موثوق slim نحيف forgetful كثير النسيان dark-complexioned داكن البشرة

Appearance صفات المظهر	Character صفات الشخصية
dark-complexioned wavy Slim Overweight smart	Bright Lively Sensible Reliable forgetful

C page 72 Read and mark the sentences true (T) or false (F).

1 Noor got a digital camera for her birthday. T
2 Noor's birthday party was last week. F It was yesterday.
3 Uncle Adel is Noor's father's brother. F He is Noor's mother's brother.
4 Noor's mother is slim. T
5 Noor's cousin Basma has been studying History at university for a year. F She has been studying Physics.
6 Amal is always well-dressed. T
7 Noor's twin sister is very reliable. T
8 Noor sometimes forgets to do things she is supposed to do. T

D page 73 Read the example from the dialogue, then complete the sentences with the present perfect simple of the correct verb.

تمرين مهم جدا ضمن القواعد

المضارع التام

Study يدرس put يضع take يأخذ use يستخدم decide يقرر forget ينسى

Example: Have you taken any pictures yet?
1 I have not studied for my Geography exam yet.
2 Have you ever used a digital camera?
3 My cousin has already decided that she is going to study Chemistry at university.
4 My sister has never forgotten my birthday.
5 I have already put the pictures on m computer.

E page 73 **Read the example from the dialogue, then complete the sentences with the present perfect continuous of the correct verb.**

Plan يخطط	study يدرس	try يجرب	take يأخذ	visit يزور	shop يتسوق

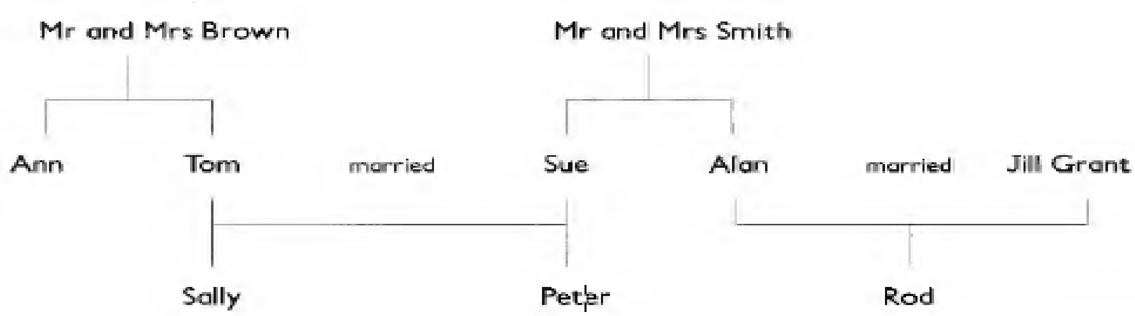
تمرين مهم جدا ضمن القواعد

المضارع التام المستمر

Example: She has been studying Physics at university for a year.

1. We have been planning the party for a week.
2. I have been shopping all morning and I'm very tired.
3. Have you been trying to call me? I think my mobile phone is broken.
4. He has been taking summer classes and hasn't had time to go to the beach.
5. Since I arrived in Rome, I have been visiting two museums a day.

A family tree



Mr Brown is ...
Mrs Brown's husband.
Ann's father.
Tom's father.
Sue's father-in-law.
Sally and Peter's grandfather.

Mrs Smith is ...
Mr Smith's wife.
Sue's mother.
Alan's mother.
Tom and Jill's mother-in-law.
Sally, Peter and Rod's grandmother.

Tom is ...
Mr and Mrs Brown's son.
Mr and Mrs Smith's son-in-law.
Ann's brother.
Sally and Peter's father.
Rod's uncle.

Sue is ...
Mr and Mrs Smith's daughter.
Mr and Mrs Brown's daughter-in-law.
Alan's sister.
Sally and Peter's mother.
Rod's aunt.
Jill's sister-in-law.

Ann is ...
Mr and Mrs Brown's daughter.
Tom's sister.
Sue's sister-in-law.
Sally and Peter's aunt.

Alan is ...
Mr and Mrs Smith's son.
Sue's brother.
Tom's brother-in-law.
Sally and Peter's uncle.
Rod's father.

Jill is ...
Rod's mother.
Mr and Mrs Smith's daughter-in-law.
Sue's sister-in-law.

Rod, Peter and Sally are cousins.

Would you like to go to the cinema? – page 49 – هل ترغب بالذهاب الى السينما؟

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Review (n, v)	إعادة النظر	audience	جمهور	observe	يرصد
comedy	كوميديا	incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق	Extremely	لأقصى حد
documentary	وثائقي	absolutely	إطلاقا	rare	نادر
mystery	الغموض	fascinating	مبهر	Invitation	دعوة

صوت 54

incredibly funny. incredibly it is an adverb. The effect it has on the adjective funny is that it makes the adjective stronger. We use it when we want to say something stronger than very plus an adjective.

مضحك بشكل لا يصدق. بشكل لا يصدق هو ظرف. تأثيرها على الصفة المضحكة هو أنها تجعل الصفة أقوى. نستخدمها عندما نريد أن نقول شيئًا أقوى من صفة زائد جدًا.

❖ Invitations, offers and promises دعوات وعروض ووعود

Invitation, offers and promises grammar and functions references p.97

Would you like to come with us? — I'd love to. / I'm afraid I can't.

I'll drive you if you want. — Thanks, that would be nice

Shall I read you the review? — Sure. / No thanks.

I'll pick you up at 6.00, then. — Great!

عند الرفض لا تقل (No) مطلقا لأنهم لا يحبون استخدامه

1 Which expression is followed by to?
would you like is followed by to.

2 Which word can be used to make an offer and to make a promise?
Will (= 'll) can be used to make an offer and a promise.

3 What do I'll, I'd and I'm stand for?
I'll = I will; I'd = I would: I'm = I am.

❖ Invitations, offers and promises دعوات وعروض ووعود

1. Use questions with Would like + to + infinitive to give invitations.

1. استخدم الأسئلة مع Would like to + المصدر لتقديم الدعوات.

Would you like to + فعل مصدر

- Would you like to come?
- Would like a cup of coffee?
- Would you like to come to my birthday party?

Do you want to + مصدر.........? غير رسمي
Do you want to come to my party?

2. Use questions with Shall+ infinitive and positive statements with will + infinitive to make offers.

2. استخدم الأسئلة مع عبارات shall + صيغة المصدر والصيغة المثبتة مع will + المصدر لتقديم العروض.

Shall + فاعل + فعل مصدر

Or

فاعل + will + فعل مصدر

- Shall I buy the cinema tickets?
- I will / 'II buy the cinema tickets.

3. Use will+ infinitive to make promises.

استخدم will + المصدر للقيام بالوعود.

فاعل + will + فعل مصدر

- I'll / I will do it tomorrow.
- We won't forget to pick you up.

❖ شكل الاسئلة

- Invite your friend to come to your birthday party. (use: would like)
  Would you like to come to my birthday party?

- Would you like to come to my birthday party? (accept أقبل) or (reject ارفض)
  Accepting: Yes, please/ thanks. That would be great/nice / I would love to / sure

  Rejecting: I'm not sure. / I'm afraid I can't.

- Shall I drive you to the school? (reject)
  I'm not sure.
  Or
  I'm afraid I can't.
- Offer to drive your brother to the school, (Use shall)
  Shall I drive you to the school?
- Help your sister with her baggage. (offer)
  I'll help you with your baggage.

- Can you always be honest with me? (promise)
  I will always be honest with you.

A page 74 55 صوت Listen to the conversation again and tick the expressions you hear.

1 Do you want to go to the cinema?	☐	2 Would you like to come with us?	✓
3 That's impossible.	☐	4 I'm afraid I can't.	✓
5 I'll drive you if you want.	✓	6 No, thank you.	☐
7 Thanks, that would be nice.	✓	8 Shall I read you the review?	✓
9 Sure.	✓	10 Would you like to go at 6.30?	☐
11 I'll pick you up at 6.00, then.	✓	12 Great!	✓

B page 74 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

تمرين مهم جدا

1 It's hot. Shall I e
2 We're going swimming. Would you like c
3 You look thirsty. I'll d
4 It's time to eat. Shall I f
5 I know this is your first time in Baghdad. Would you like a
6 I don't have time to help you with your homework now. I'll b

a) to see the city?
b) do it when I get home.
c) to come with us?
d) get you something cold to drink.
e) open a window?
f) make us some sandwiches?

C page 74 Unscramble the sentences to make an invitation, offer or promise for each situation. Add a question mark if necessary.

تمرين مهم جدا ضمن القواعد قد يستخدم كإعادة ترتيب أو كقواعد

1 Situation: You want to invite your friend to your house for dinner.
You say: dinner Would my house you to for to come like
Would you like to come to my house for dinner?

2 Situation: Your friend says he/she is thirsty.
You say: juice of you I glass a get Shall
Shall I get you a glass of juice?

3 Situation: Your friend is carrying a lot of heavy bags.
You say: help will I those you carry
I will help you carry those.

4 Situation: Your friend promises to write to you during the holidays.
You say: a from you will send Egypt I postcard
I will send you a postcard from Egypt.

D page 75 Match the sentences in Exercise C with a reply.

like and love can be followed by nouns or pronouns as well as by to + infinitive:

يمكن أن يُتبع like وlove بالأسماء أو الضمائر بالإضافة إلى to + المصدر:

I 'd love one.
I'd like that.

a) Thanks a lot. 3 b) I'm afraid I can't. 1
c) Don't forget! 4 d) Yes, I'd love one. 2

Activity book – page 75

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Really nice	حقا لطيف	very quiet	هادئة جدا	slim	معتدل البنية (نحيف)
Incredibly patient	صبور بشكل لا يصدق	Extremely lively	حيوية للغاية	forgetful	كثير النسيان
Absolutely exhausting	مرهقة للغاية	exhausting	مرهق	tall	طويل
Extremely noisy	صاخبة للغاية	bald	أصلع	short	قصير
Dark - complexioned	داكن البشرة	lively	حيوي	quiet	هادئ

57/56 صوت

❖ Intensifying adverbs الظروف المقوية

❖ adverb and adjective combination تركيب الظرف والصفة

Really nice **Incredibly patient** **very quiet**
Extremely noisy **Absolutely exhausting** **Extremely lively**

Activity book – page 75

A page 75 **Describe the people. Write three adjectives from the box under each picture.**

slim	bright	overweight	forgetful	bald
Smart	lively	dark-complexioned	tall	



overweight
bald
bright



smart
dark-complexioned
lively



tall
slim
forgetful

B page 76 **Read the diary entry. Then mark the sentences true (T) or false (F).**

DEAR DIARY, A NEW FRIEND

I met someone **really nice** yesterday. Her name is Nora. I met her at my cousin Hamid's birthday Party. Hamid is only three, so my aunt asked me to come and help watch the children. It was **absolutely exhausting**! There were 20 children and it was **extremely noisy**. Nora was there with her little brother, but she didn't seem to mind the noise at all. She was **incredibly patient**. While the children were playing, I had a chance to talk to her a little. I was a little nervous at first because she looked very smart and a bit serious, but after a few minutes I realized she is **extremely lively** and fun to talk to. She is also **incredibly bright**. She is just my age, but she is already studying chemistry at university. I hope we will become good friends.

Bye for now.

Fatin

1 Fatin went to a birthday party. T 2 The party was very quiet. F
3 Nora was very well-dressed. T 4 Nora is very shy. F
5 Fatin is at university. F

1 - True. 2 - False. (The party was extremely noisy.)
3 - True. 4 - False. (Nora is extremely lively.)
5 - False. (She doesn't seem to be at university because she seems surprised that Nora, who is the same age, is already at university.)

C page 76 Add the words in bold to the pairs you wrote in your vocabulary notebook in the last lesson.
ضيفهم لدفترك

Really nice	Incredibly patient	very quiet	Incredibly bright
Extremely noisy	Absolutely exhausting	Extremely lively	

D page 76 Complete the sentences with an adverb and adjective combination from your vocabulary notebook. صوت 56 Then listen and check.

I My sister is incredibly patient. She spent three hours doing a puzzle.
2 You look really smart in your new suit.
3 My uncle told us absolutely fascinating stories about his travels in far-away countries.
4 This coin is extremely rare. There are only ten of them left in the world.
5 I think you'll like my friend, Akim. He's really nice.
6 I saw an incredibly funny film on TV last night. I laughed so hard I almost cried.
7 The music was loud and everyone was talking, so the party was extremely noisy.
8 He must be incredibly bright if he got top marks in all subjects.

E page 77 listen to the sentences again. Which word is stressed - the adverb, the adjective or both?
both are stressed. كلاهما مشددان في اللفظ (الشدة) في لفظ الكلمة

F page 77 Work with a partner. Take turns describing a person for your partner to guess. It can be someone you both know, or someone from a book or TV.

A: Ali is incredibly patient.
B: he looks really smart.
A: He tells us absolutely fascinating stories
B: sometimes he turns out to be incredibly funny.

❖ الواجب البيتي

Write a description of someone you know. Use some of the words and phrases from your vocabulary notebook and other words you know.
اكتب وصفًا لشخص تعرفه. استخدم بعض الكلمات والعبارات من دفتر المفردات الخاص بك والكلمات الأخرى التي تعرفها.

I would like to write about my English teacher, He isn't very tall. Also, He isn't very thin. He has got brown eyes and black straight hair. he has got beard. It's true that he is really serious but sometimes he gets to be incredibly funny. My teacher is extremely nice and intelligent. And hopes one day that he gets master's degree in English language.
I like my teacher not just because what I have just mentioned but because we have a lot of things in common, he likes movies and anime so much just like me, actually I don't think of him as my teacher only but more like a best friend that's why I respect him so much.
أود أن أكتب عن مدرسي للغة الإنجليزية، فهو ليس طويل القامة. وكذلك ليس نحيفًا جدًا. لديه عيون بنية وشعر أسود أملس(سرح). لديه لحية. صحيح أنه جاد جدا ولكن في بعض الأحيان يكون مضحكًا بشكل لا يصدق. أستاذي لطيف للغاية وذكي. ويأمل أن يحصل في يوم من الأيام على درجة الماجستير في اللغة الإنجليزية.

أنا أحب أستاذي ليس فقط لما ذكرته للتو ولكن لأن لدينا الكثير من الأشياء المشتركة، فهو يحب الأفلام والأنمي مثلي تمامًا، في الواقع لا أفكر فيه كمعلمي فقط ولكن أكثر كأفضل صديق، لهذا السبب أحترمه كثيرًا.

A birthday present - page 50 – هدية عيد الميلاد

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
diary	مذكرة	music CD	قرص موسيقي	group	مجموعة
bilingual dictionary	قاموس ثنائي اللغة	mobile phone	تليفون محمول	terrible	رهيب
Man's shirt	قميص رجالي	fantastic	جميل	Extreme adjectives	الصفات الشديدة
computer game	لعبة كومبيوتر	favourite	المفضل	amazing	مذهل
thrilled	بسعادة غامرة	gorgeous	خلاب	exciting	مثير

صوت 58

Future simple
Grammar and function references p.97/98

use will/ won't + infinitive:
- to say what you think or hope will happen.
  I hope you'll buy me one for my birthday.
  Our team will win the match.
- to make a promise.
  we'll buy him a mobile phone this year
- to say what you have just decided to do.
  Uh, I'm not sure yet. Maybe I'll get him some CDs

❖ Future simple مستقبل بسيط

	form (الصيغة)الشكل	example مثال
مثبت affirmative	I, we, you, they / He, she, it فاعل + will + فعل مصدر	I'll buy you a mobile phone.
نفي negative	فاعل + won't (will not) + فعل مصدر	I won't buy you a mobile phone.
question سؤال	will + فاعل + فعل مصدر......?	Will you buy a mobile phone?
مع أدوات الاستفهام	أداة الاستفهام + will + فاعل + فعل مصدر....?	What will you buy?

Use الاستخدام

1. Use the future simple to say what you think or hope will happen or even a fact.
استخدم المستقبل البسيط لتقول ما تعتقده أو تأمل حدوثه أو حتى حقيقة.

- Our team will win the match.
- The sun will rise at 7am.

2. Use the future simple to make a promise.
Promises / requests / refusals / offers. This is sometimes called 'volitional' will. It's about wanting to do something or not wanting to do something in the future.
وعود / طلبات / رفض / عروض. وهذا ما يسمى أحيانًا بwill "الاختيارية او الارادية". يتعلق الأمر بالرغبة في القيام بشيء ما أو عدم الرغبة في القيام بشيء ما في المستقبل.

- I'll buy you a mobile phone for your birthday. (promise)
- I'll help you with your homework. (promise)
- Will you pick me up? (request)
- I won't go! (refusals)

3. Use the future simple to say what you have just decided to do. (a decision at moment of speaking)
استخدم المستقبل البسيط لتقول ما قررت فعله للتو. (قرار في لحظة التحدث)

- Oh, there isn't any more milk! I'll buy some this afternoon.
- I'm hungry, I'll eat a sandwich.

❖ شكل الاسئلة

1. I think Farah will pass (pass) her exam. She has been studying a lot. (complete with will / won't)
   I think Farah will pass (pass) her exam. She has been studying a lot.
2 Don't wait for us. We _________ (not be) back in time for dinner.
   Don't wait for us. We won't be/ will not be (not be) back in time for dinner.
3. ___________ (you/ help) me with my homework? (complete with future simple)
   Will you help (you/ help) me with my homework?

Activity book – page 79

A page 77 59 صوت Listen to the conversation again. What do the family think of these things as birthday presents for Mustafa?



1 a CD — a good idea
2 a diary — a bad idea / a terrible idea / boring
3 a computer game — quite a good idea
4 a mobile phone — a fantastic idea
5 a shirt — not exciting, but useful

Now read the conversation on Student's Book page SO and check your answers.

B page 78 Complete the sentences with will or will not+ infinitive of the verb in brackets.

تمرين مهم جدا ضمن القواعد

1 I think Farah will pass (pass) her exam. She has been studying a lot.
2 Don't wait for us. We won't be/ will not be (not be) back in time for dinner.
3 Will you help (you/ help) me with my homework? انتبه من الاستفهام في الامتحان ايضا
4 I think that was the doorbell. I will answer (answer) it.
5 I hope Dad will be (be) back in time for my birthday.
6 They will never forget (never / forget) this wonderful holiday.
7 I will have (have) a cup of tea, please.
8 The neighbours will complain (complain) if you leave your car there.

C page 78 We usually use contracted forms when we are speaking. 60 صوت Listen to the sentences and repeat them.

عادة ما نستخدم الصيغ المختصرة عندما نتحدث. صوت 60 استمع إلى الجمل وكررها.

1 We won't be back in time for dinner.
2 I'll answer it.
3 I hope Dad'll be back in time for my birthday.
4 They'll never forget this wonderful holiday.
5 I'll have a cup of tea, please.

D page 78 **Look back at Student's Book page 50. What adjectives are used to describe these things? Write them in the sentences.**

1 Yusef wants to buy a fantastic - very good CD.
2 Yasmin thinks a diary is a terrible - very bad idea.
3 Yusef thinks it is amazing - very surprising that Mustafa said the game was too easy.
4 Yusef says Mustafa will be thrilled - very happy to get a mobile phone.

E page 79 **Write one sentence about something you think is amazing, one about something you think is terrible, and one about something you think is fantastic.**

Example: I think hummingbirds are amazing because they can fly backwards.

- I think our universe is amazing. أعتقد أن كوننا مذهل
- I think black holes are terrible. أعتقد أن الثقوب السوداء رهيبة
- I believe that shooting stars(meteors) are fantastic. أعتقد أن الشُهب (النيازك) رائعة

Planning a party – page 51 – تخطيط لحفلة

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
celebration	احتفال	**printer**	طابعة / عامل الطباعة	**worry**	قلق
order	يطلب في مطعم / يأمر	**florist**	بائع الزهور	**hope**	يأمل
invitation	رسالة دعوة	**arrange**	يرتب	**wish**	يتمنى
print	يطبع	**important**	مهم	**fixed**	مثبت
clean	ينظف	**choose**	يختار	**list**	قائمة
peanuts	الفول السوداني	**crisps**	رقائق البطاطس	**pieces**	قطع
olive	زيتون	**Soft-drinks**	المشروبات الغازية	**cheese**	جبنه
dull	ممل	**company**	شركة	**hair**	عر

- Look at what the family has to do to plan their party. Match the things on the list with a picture.

1 order the food **E**
2 have a cake made **B**
3 get the invitations printed **A**
4 have the house cleaned **C**
5 choose the flowers **D**



get / have + past participle Grammar and Functions reference p.98

Use get or have +object+ past participle to show that someone else is doing something for you or to you.

I'll get the invitations printed. (I'll ask someone at the printers to print them)
I'll have the house cleaned . (I'll ask someone at the cleaning company to clean it.)

What do you do if your computer stops working?
What do you do when the walls in your room look dull and dirty?
Do you cut your hair yourself?
Do you make your own clothes /meals?

❖ get / have + past participle
❖ Informal passive (Causative verbs (الأفعال السببية))
نفس الموضوع في السادس اعدادي

Get/have	Object مفعول به	Past participle (الماضي التام (التصريف الثالث))
I got He had	My hair The gift	Cut yesterday Sent to his friend

❖ **Use الاستخدام**

➢ Use this form when someone does something for you or to you.

استخدم هذا النموذج عندما يفعل شخص ما شيئًا لأجلك أو لك.

- I am having the windows washed this afternoon. (I am paying someone to wash the windows for me.)
- He had his bicycle stolen yesterday. (A thief stole his bicycle.)
- They got the mobile phone fixed at the shop. (Someone at the shop fixed the mobile phone for them.)
- The students got their report cards signed by their parents. (The parents signed the report cards for their children.)

❖ شكل السؤال والجواب

❖ أولا مجرد توضيح للقواعد:

المسببات هي الأفعال التي تستخدم للإشارة إلى أن شخصًا ما يتسبب في قيام شخص آخر بعمل شيء من أجل الشخص الأول. يمكن للمرء أن يجعل شخصًا ما يفعل شيئًا له / لها عن طريق السؤال أو الدفع أو الطلب أو إجبار الشخص.

❖ have .1

❖ امنح(اعطي) شخصًا آخر مسؤولية القيام بشيء ما

❖ شيء ما تم القيام بها لأجل شخص ما

الفاعل + have (أي زمن) + مفعول به (في العادة شيء) + p.p. . . .

❖ I asked somebody to cut my hair.

❖ I had my hair cut.

❖ get .2

❖ إقناع / تشجيع شخص ما على فعل شيء ما

❖ شيء ما تم القيام بها لأجل شخص ما

الفاعل + get (أي زمن) + مفعول به (في العادة شيء) + p.p. . . .

❖ I asked somebody to fix the camera.

❖ She got the camera fixed

❖ طريقة الحل (have/get).

1. اذا وجد asked في الجملة فنستخدم الفاعل من بداية الجملة قبل asked

وبما أن زمن asked في الماضي فنستخدم Had/ got وفعل الجملة الرئيسي ينزل p.p

(لا تقم بذكر القائم بالفعل لأجلنا أو لأجل شخص أخر لأننا نتكلم بنوع من أنواع المبني للمجهول مع (had / got)

الفاعل + had/got + مفعول به (في العادة شيء) + p.p. . . .

1. I asked someone to fix the computer. My father .... (Use get) مستخدم وزاري
   I got the computer fixed

2. I asked the mechanic to check the brakes. (Re-write with the correct form of- have/make)
   I had the brakes checked

THE WAY TEACHING IS MEANT TO BE
FADHIL ALQASSAP

2. إذا لم يذكر asked في الجملة وتم ذكر المفعول به في الجملة بالاسم (the lady / the witness) فنستخدمه كفاعل ونشتق صفة تملك مناسب من الفاعل المذكور

ضمير الفاعل	صفات تملك (تسبق الاسم الموصوف)	ضمير الفاعل	صفات تملك (تسبق الاسم الموصوف)
I	my ي	He	his هُ
We	our نا	She	her ها
You	your ك	It	its هُ / ها
They	their هم		

1. A photographer took a picture of the lady. The lady got ……… taken. (Complete) مستخدم وزاري

The lady got her picture taken

2. A photographer took a picture of the witness. The witness ……… (Rewrite the sentence with the correct form of "have")

The witness had his picture taken.

3. كذلك إذا لم تكن لدينا asked في الجملة ولم يذكر المفعول به بالاسم فأننا نستخدم ضمير فاعل نشتقهُ من صفة التملك في الجملة (راجع نفس الجدول السابق للنقطة الثانية)

1. A photographer took her picture. She …. (Re – write using the correct form of "have") مستخدم وزاري

she had her picture taken

❖ وقد يستخدم كاختيار من بين القوسين فقط تذكر ان الفعل تصريف ثالث مع (got/had)

1. She had her picture (take / taken).
2. She got the window (fix / fixed)
3. I got my hair (cut / cutted) because it was too long.
4. We got the house (paint / painted) because we didn't like the colour.
5. Ahmed had his picture (take / taken) with a movie star.

Activity book – page 79

A page 79 Complete the sentences with words from the box. 61 صوت Then listen and check.

would you like to	will you	she'll	we'll	shall I	I'll

1 Mother: There's a lot to do. Do you think __we'll__ have time to do it all?
Nabil: I'm sure we will.
2 Mother: Oh, dear! I forgot to arrange to have a cake made.
Nabil: That's OK. __I'll___ do it. Then I can choose the style.
3 Mother: I hope we can get the camera fixed. I want to take a lot of pictures.
Nabil: __shall I____ take it to the repair shop?
Mother: Yes, that would be nice of you.
4 Mother: __will you____ remember to order the food before the end of the week? It's very important.
Farah: I will. Don't worry.
5 Mother: We must get the invitations printed quickly.
Nabil: Farah has time. I'm sure __she'll__ go to the printer's.
6 Mother: would you come to the flower shop with me? It might be fun.
Farah: OK. I can help you choose the flowers.

B page 80 Look back at Exercise A and complete these sentences.

1 Nabil arranged to have a cake made and get the camera fixed.
2 Farah arranged to get the invitations printed.

C page 80 **Use get or have with these verbs to complete the sentences.**

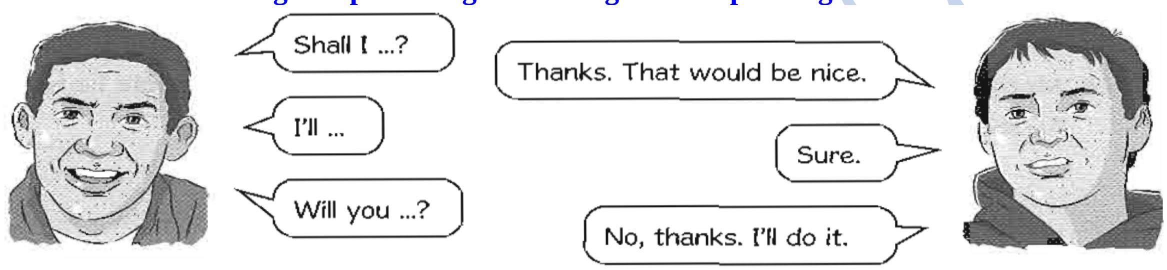
مهم جدا ضمن القواعد

1 I _ got/ had __ my hair (cut) _ cut__ because it was too long.
2 We __ got/ had_ the house (paint) __ painted___ because we didn't like the colour.
3 Ahmed _ got/ had _ his picture (take) __ taken__ with a movie star.

D page 80 **Work with a partner. Imagine you are planning a party for a friend. The list below is your 'To do' list. Add four more ideas.**

TO DO
get the food prepared
get the computer fixed
borrow some computer games (from Ahmed)
have the gifts wrapped
choose some music CDs
- Get the house cleaned
- Have my hair cut
- Get the music player fixed
- Have the house painted

Now take turns offering and promising to do things and responding.



Wedding customs – page 52 - عادات الزفاف (القطعة مطلوبة تحريري)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
wedding	زفاف	Mother-in-law	حماة "أم الزوج أو أم الزوجة	whip	سوط
ceremony	مراسم	Father-in-law	الحمو أبو الزوجة أو الزوج	fabric	قماش
bride	عروس	Sister-in-law	أخت الزوج أو اخت الزوجة	Relative(n)	نسبي
groom	عريس	Brother-in-law	شقيق الزوج / صهر - نسيب	Evil spirit	روح شريرة
purity	نقاء	Daughter-in-law	كنة زوجة الابن / ابنة بالنسب	both	كلاهما
symbolize	يرمز	Son-in-law	زوج الابنة لأب البنت وأمها / ابنه قانونيا	dance	يرقص
either	إما / أي من	some	بعض	Bedouin	بدوي
traditional	تقليدي	marry	الزواج	Sword	سيف
henna	الحناء	barber	حلاق	celebration	احتفال

- **Look at the photo. Have you ever been to a wedding? What was it like?**
- **Now do Exercise A in your Activity Book.**
- **Read the article, then answer the questions in Exercises B and C in the Activity Book.**



weddings are different from country to country. They are also different from what they were in the past. In the past, weddings in many countries took place over several days. Now few people have weddings like that. People often don't have the time or money to take days to get married. In the United Arab Emirates, some people even get married in group ceremonies where hundreds of people get married at once. We will look at some of the more traditional wedding customs.

A wedding is important to the bride and groom and also to both families. Because of this, traditional weddings have many ceremonies that include the couple's families and friends. In the Middle East and North Africa, the bride's hands and feet a.re often decorated with henna. This is to make her beautiful and also bring her luck. While this is happening, the girl's friends drink tea with her and listen to music. In Morocco, the groom's friends carry him, in a special chair, to the barber's for a haircut.

Weddings are a happy occasion for all the people in the family. Families celebrate with music, singing and dancing. At a Bedouin ceremony, men dance traditional dances with swords and whips. Food is also an important part of the celebration. The parents of the bride and groom invite friends and relatives for big meals. In Morocco, the bride's mother-in-law welcomes her to her new home with milk and dates.

Many customs include special wedding clothes. Bedouin women wear clothes made of colourful fabrics. In Iraq, the bride wears white to symbolize purity.



Determiners few, some, both, all Grammar and functions references p.98

Determiners tell you more about the noun. المحددات تخبرك بالمزيد عن الاسم

- Now few people have weddings like that.
- Some people get martied in group ceremonies.
- A wedding is important to the bride and groom and also to both families.
- Weddings are a time of joyful celebration for all the people.

❖ Determiners محددات
❖ Quantifiers محددو الكمية (Few, some, both, all)

Determiners

قبل كل شي ما هو الdeterminer (توسع)

❖ A determiner is a word placed in front of a noun to specify quantity (e.g., "one dog," "many dogs") or to clarify what the noun refers to (e.g., "my dog," "that dog," "the dog").
المحدد هو كلمة توضع أمام اسم لتحديد الكمية (على سبيل المثال، "كلب واحد"، "العديد من الكلاب") أو لتوضيح ما يشير إليه الاسم (على سبيل المثال، "كلبي"، "ذاك الكلب"، " الكلب").

All determiners can be classified as one of the following:

يمكن تصنيف جميع المحددات على أنها واحدة مما يلي:

- An Article (a/an, the)
- A Demonstrative (this, that, these, those)
- A Possessive (my, your, his, her, its, our, their)
- A Quantifier (common examples include Few, some, both, all)

❖ Determiners give you more information about the noun. They go before the noun they modify.
المحددات تعطيك مزيدًا من المعلومات حول الاسم. يوضعون قبل الاسم الذي يقومون بتعديله.

Compare قارن
- All students at my school study French. (Every student in the school studies French.)
- Few students at my school study French. (Not many students study French.)
- Some mobile phones in this shop are expensive. (You can buy an expensive or a cheap mobile phone in this shop.)
- Both mobile phones in the shop are expensive. (There are two mobile phones in the shop. They are expensive.)

❖ We use quantifiers when we want to give someone information about the number of something: how much or how many.
نستخدم المحددات الكمية عندما نريد أن نعطي شخصًا ما معلومات حول عدد شيء ما: كم للغير المعدود أو كم للمعدود.

All Some	معدود وغير معدود +

➢ Some mobile phones in this shop are expensive. (You can buy an expensive or a cheap mobile phone in this shop.)
➢ All students at my school study French. (Every student in the school studies French.)

Few Either both	معدود +

➢ Few students at my school study French. (Not many students study French.)
➢ Both mobile phones in the shop are expensive. (There are two mobile phones in the shop. They are expensive.)

انتبه

❖ If we are talking about two people or things, we use the quantifiers both, either and neither:
إذا كنا نتحدث عن شخصين أو شيئين، فإننا نستخدم محددات الكمية، both وeither وneither

➢ A wedding is important to the bride and groom and also to both families.

A page 81 **Match the words in the box to their definitions.**

التمرين مهم جدا اما ضمن القواعد أو فرع خاص ضمن الvocabulary

ceremony مراسم   wedding زفاف   bride عروس   groom عريس   mother-in-law حماة "أم الزوج أو أم الزوجة   henna الحناء

1 a formal event to celebrate a special occasion — ceremony — حدث رسمي للاحتفال بمناسبة خاصة
2 the man who is getting married — groom — الرجل الذي يتزوج
3 the mother of the person you marry — mother-in-law — والدة الشخص الذي تتزوجينه
4 the celebration when people get married — wedding — الاحتفال عندما يتزوج الناس
5 a plant that is used to decorate the skin or colour the hair — henna — نبات يستخدم لتزيين الجلد او تلوين الشعر
6 the woman who is getting married — bride — المرأة التي تتزوج

B page 81 **Answer these questions using information from the text.**

الأسئلة عن القطعة مطلوبة تحريري

1 In which country do people get married in group ceremonies?في أي بلد يتزوج الناس في احتفالات جماعية؟
The UAE. الامارات العربية المتحدة
2 What are the bride's hands and feet often decorated with?بماذا تزين يدي وقدمي العروس؟
Henna. الحناء
3 In Morocco, where do the groom's friends take him before the wedding?في المغرب إلى أين يأخذه أصدقاء العريس قبل الزفاف؟
To the barber's. الى الحلاق
4 What do men do in a traditional Bedouin ceremony?ماذا يفعل الرجال في حفل بدوي تقليدي؟
Dance with swords and whips. يرقصون بالسيوف والسوط
5 What does a white dress symbolize in Iraq?ماذا يرمز الثوب الابيض في العراق؟
Purity. النقاء

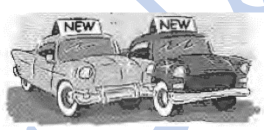
C page 81 **Now discuss these questions in pairs.**

1 Why do some people get married in group ceremonies?
Maybe it's a tradition or because the groom can't afford an individual wedding.
2 What is your opinion of group ceremonies?
I think they are terrible.
3 What do you think of the traditions mentioned in the article?
I think some of them are amazing and some are not.

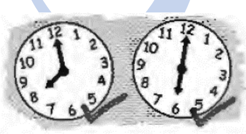
D page 82 **Complete these sentences with the correct word from the box.**

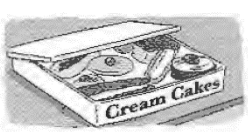
تمرين مهم جداً

Some بعض   few القليل   either أما   both كلاهما   more اكثر   all كل

1 

Both cars are new. Which one shall I buy?

2 
We can go to the cinema either at six o'clock or at eight.

3 

I'd like some cakes, please. No, actually, I'd like them all

E **page 82** **Write a paragraph about wedding customs ln Iraq. Write between 75 and 100 words.**

❖ **انشاء مهم جدا تحريري (أنشاء عن عادات الزفاف في العراق)**

What happens at weddings in Iraq?

Write about the ceremony first.
where it takes place, who attends, what everyone wears.

Next. write about what happens after the wedding ceremony

❖ Write a paragraph about wedding customs ln Iraq
عادات الزواج في العراق

The Wedding customs in Iraq are various but in all cases the man goes with his parents to hers, and tells them his desire asks for her hand. If the woman's family says yes, then the man's family will give a dowry to the girl's family. After that they buy rings, a golden one for the girl and a silvery for the guy.

Once they are engaged there are many celebrations. One of them is to decorated the bride's hands with a henna that is called "Laylit al henna"

On the day of the wedding, the bride wears a white dress. And the groom wears a suit. The wedding may take place either in a wedding hall or in groom's house. And those who attend the wedding are their families, friends, neighbors and their relatives.

عادات الزفاف في العراق متنوعة ولكن في جميع الأحوال يذهب الرجل مع والديه إلى والديها ويخبرهم برغبته في طلب يدها. إذا أجابت عائلة المرأة بنعم، فإن أسرة الرجل ستمنح المهر لعائلة الفتاة. بعد ذلك يشترون الخواتم، خاتما ذهبيا للفتاة وخاتما فضيا للرجل.

بمجرد خطوبتهم هناك العديد من الاحتفالات. إحداها تزين يدي العروس بحنة تسمى "ليلة الحناء"

في يوم الزفاف، ترتدي العروس فستانًا أبيض. والعريس يرتدي بدلة. قد يتم حفل الزفاف إما في قاعة الزفاف أو في منزل العريس. والذين يحضرون العرس هم عائلاتهم وأصدقائهم وجيرانهم وأقاربهم.

❖ **الشكل في الامتحان عن الموضوع**

1. **(Both / either) cars are new. Which one shall I buy?**
2. **We can go to the cinema (either / neither) at six o'clock or at eight**

Welcome Home Week – page 53 – اهلا بأسبوع العودة الى الوطن

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
concert	حفلة موسيقية	For ages	لعصور	For a long time	لوقت طويل
Gaelic football	كرة القدم الغيلية	home	وطن	summer	الصيف
Looking forward	يتطلع	Flute/ flu:t/	ناي / مزمار	band	فرقة
perform	ينفذ	competition	المنافسة	present participle	المضارع المستمر

Who do you think is coming home?
Where might they have been?
Do you think it is a welcome for many people? Why?

Note: Sean is pronounced /shʊən/ 62 صوت

Future continuous
Grammar and functions reference p.98

- Make the future continuous with will/won't be + present participle.
- Use the future continuous to talk about
  - something that will be happening at aspecified time in the future. I'll be going back home in August
  - an activity in the future that is already planned.

❖ Future continuous مستقبل مستمر

	form الشكل(الصيغة)	example مثال
مثبت affirmative	I, we, you, they / He, she, it فاعل + will + be + فعل(ing)	Ali will be visiting us in May.
نفي negative	فاعل + won't (will not) + be + فعل(ing)	Ali will not/won't be visiting us in May.
question سؤال	will + فاعل + be + فعل(ing) ……?	will Ali be visiting us in May?
مع أدوات الاستفهام	أداة الاستفهام + will + فاعل + be + فعل(ing) ….?	Who will be visiting us in may? Where will you be going?

❖ Use

1. Use the future continuous to talk about something that will be happening at a specified time in the future.
استخدم المستقبل المستمر للتحدث عن شيء سيحدث في وقت محدد في المستقبل. (عكس أحد استخدامات الماضي المستمر في الماضي)
   - At six o'clock, I will be eating dinner. Can you call me at seven?
   - A lot of people will be coming to Mosul next week for the festival.

2. Use the future continuous to talk about an activity that is already planned.
استخدم المستقبل المستمر للتحدث عن نشاط تم التخطيط له بالفعل.
   - My mother-in-law will be visiting us in May.
   - Will you be going to your grandparents' house this summer?

A page 83 صوت 62 Listen to a conversation and complete the notes about Sean's family. Then read the conversation on Student's Book page 53 and check your answers.

	Where they live	Their job	Length of stay	What they will be doing
Uncle Patrick	The gulf	oil worker	one month	playing in concerts
Cousin Niall	Africa	aid worker	two weeks	playing Gaelic football
Aunt Mary	USA	History teacher	a few days	giving a talk
Cousin Maeve	USA	____	a few days	Irish dancing competition

B page 83 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

تمرين مهم ضمن الvocabulary

1 I have a test tomorrow, so I'll be <u>C</u>
2 Sean and Niall will be <u>e</u>
3 Will you be <u>d</u>
4 He's going to university in another town, so he won't be <u>b</u>
5 I have lots of visitors tomorrow, so I'll be <u>a</u>

a) cooking all day.
b) living at home next year.
c) studying all night.
d) going to the concert?
e) playing football together.

C page 83 Complete the sentences with the future continuous form of the verbs in brackets. Look back at the Language box to help you.

تمرين مهم ضمن القواعد

My grandparents 1) <u>will be having</u> (have) a big party next week in their house in London. My parents 2) <u>will be flying</u> (fly) to London tomorrow to help them prepare for it and we 3) <u>with be joining</u> (join) them there later. I'm very excited because I 4) <u>will be seeing</u> (see) cousins I haven't seen in years. We 5) <u>won't be coming</u> (not/ come) home right after the party. We 6) <u>will be staying</u> (stay) in London for another week.

Glass-blowing - a family business – page 54 - نفخ الزجاج – تجارة عائلية

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
embroidery	تطريز	business	عمل / تجارة / شأن	sibling	أخ أو أخت / أقرباء
Copper-engraving	النقش على النحاس	skills	مهارات	pipe	يضخ / انبوب
workshop	ورشة عمل	craftsmen	الحرفيين	pliers	كماشة
family	عائلة	generation	توليد / جيل	Interviewer	المحاور

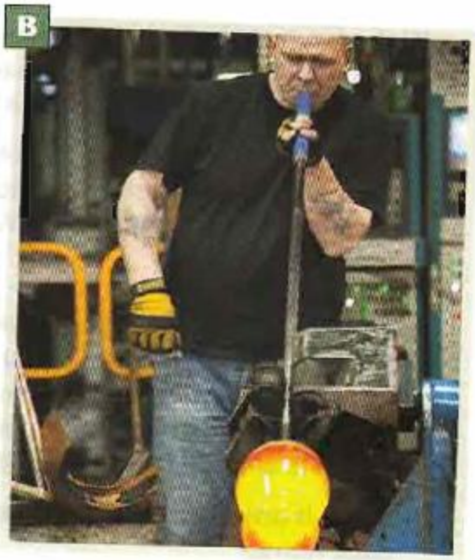
صوت 63

- Read the extract from a guidebook about Lebanon. Then do Exercise A in the Activity Book.

A



B





embroidered table cloth



engraved copper bowl

If you are travelling to Lebanon, try to see some of the **gorgeous** objects people make there. Some of the most popular crafts are embroidery, copper-engraving and glass-blowing. If you are lucky, you can visit a **workshop** and see how the objects are made.

Glass was known in the Middle East over 4,000 years ago. People used glass to make things like bowls, vases and jewellery, but the glass was thicker than the glass we know today. Then, over 2,100 years ago, Syrian **craftsmen** invented glass-blowing. They used this technique to make finer, more beautiful glass objects.

Glass-blowing has been a popular craft for centuries in Lebanon. Today it is used by some small **family businesses**. The **skills** used are passed down from father to son and the craftsmen are proud of their work. Unfortunately, it is difficult to make enough money just by blowing glass. Many craftsmen have to have other jobs too.

A page 84 Answer these questions about the text on Student's Book page 54.

1 What are some popular Lebanese crafts?
Embroidery, copper-engraving and glassblowing.
2 Where was glass-blowing invented and when?
In Syria, over 2,100 years ago.
3 How was the glass that was used before then different?
It was thicker.
4 How long has glass been known in the Middle East?
Over 4,000 years.
5 Why is this technique important?
Because craftsman could make finer and more beautiful glass objects.
6 How do the Lebanese glass-blowers learn the skill?
From their fathers
7 Is glass-blowing done in large factories?
No, in small family businesses.
8 Why do many glass-blowers have to do other jobs?
Because it is difficult to make enough money from glass-blowing.

B page 85 صوت 64 Listen to the interview with Hadi again and answer these questions. Write short answers.

1 Is glass-blowing easy? No, it's a bit difficult.
2 Why is it tiring? Because of the heat.
3 Who does Hadi work with? His father, uncle and two brothers.
4 Is his son a glass-blower? No, not yet.
5 Is glass-blowing well-paid? No. (His brother wanted a better-paid job.)

Now read the interview on Student's Book page 55 and check your answers.

❖ الواجب البيتي

Write strong adjectives with these meanings. Then use each one in a sentence that shows its meaning.

مهم جدا ضمن الاملاء

1 very good fantastic

The Movie was fantastic.

2 very tiring exhausting

We cooked all day for the wedding. It was exhausting.

3 very bad terrible

Blackholes are terrible

4 very happy thrilled

I was thrilled with my present.

5 very surprising amazing

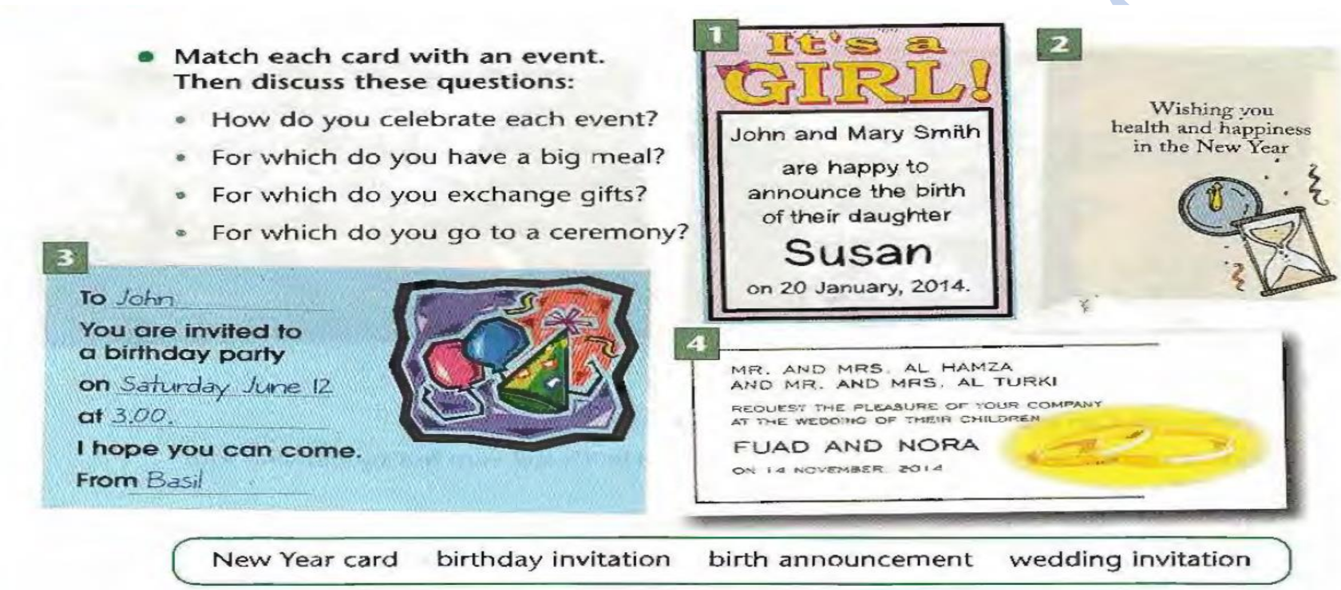
This car is amazing.

6 very beautiful gorgeous

The girl was wearing a gorgeous dress.

Special events – page 56 – أحداث خاصة

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
birth	ولادة	prepare	يحضر
Announce	يعلن	Health and happiness	صحة وسعادة
Request the pleasure of your company	اطلب شرف مرافقتك/ حضورك	meal	وجبة
Baby sit	مجالسة الأطفال	exchange	يستبدل / تبادل
Name someone after someone else	تسمية شخص بعد شخص آخر	gift	هدية
boy	صبي	girl	فتاة
care	يهتم	spend	يقضي



New Year card 2 **birthday invitation 3** **birth announcement 1** **wedding invitation 4**

I'm having a party. Do you want to come?
I Would you like to one?

- **The difference between formal and informal language, examples:**

الفرق بين اللغة الرسمية وغير الرسمية، الأمثلة:

- **Formal language:**
  - **Could you pass me the salt, please?**
  - **The Smiths request the pleasure of your company.**
  - **It is vital that all parties attend the meeting.**

- **Informal language:**
  - **Give me that book.**
  - **You're invited to our party.**
  - **Everybody must be at the meeting.**

Verb + to + infinitive
Grammar and functions reference p.98

- They refuse to tell me what they are.
- I've offered to baby-sit whenever they want.

فعل+ to + فعل مصدر

refuse	agree	offer	want	decide	promise
learn	remember	forget			

❖ Some verbs are usually followed by to + infinitive.

❖ بعض الأفعال يتبعها عادةً to + مصدر.

Here are some common verbs that follow this pattern.

- Dad refused to tell me what my present was.
- Did you offer to pick him up at the station?
- Hasan and Botool want to get married in the spring.
- It was too hot to play football, so we decided to go to the cinema.
- Mum agreed to drive me to the mall.
- Ahmed is learning to blow glass like his father.
- Dana promised to bake a cake for the party.
- I remembered to send the invitations, but I forgot to buy the flowers.

❖ Some of these verbs can also be followed by nouns and noun phrases.

❖ يمكن أيضًا اتباع بعض هذه الأفعال بالأسماء والعبارات الاسمية.

فعل+ to + اسم / عبارة اسمية

- She remembered I forgot my name.
- We wanted a cold drink after our long walk.
- My brother learned Spanish quickly.
- My friend refused the money that I offered her.

❖ الشكل في الامتحان

1. Dad refused (to tell/ tell) me what my present was.
2. Did you offer (to pick / pick) him up at the station?
3. Mum agreed (to drive / drive) me to the mall.
4. Dana promised (to bake / bake) a cake for the party.

Activity book – page 86

A page 86 Answer these questions about the e-mail on Student's Book page 56. Use your own words where possible.

Refuse يرفض argument جدال baby-sit مجالسة الاطفال

1 What is Helen's news?
She is going to have a little cousin.

2 Why did her aunt refuse to tell her the possible names for the baby?
Because there was an argument about her name when she was born.

3 What names does Helen like?
She likes Alan and Aida.

4 What do the names mean?
Alan means good-looking/handsome. Aida means very happy/joyful.

5 What did Helen offer to do?
She offered to look after the baby when it is born.

B page 86 Complete the sentences with the correct endings.

Answers

verbs that are followed by to + infinitive, e.g., want, promise.

تمرين مهم

1d; 2a; 3h; 4g; 5c; 6b; 7c; 8f

1 When I met him at the station, I offered to help him carry his suitcases.
2 She refused to work late because she had to pick up her children.
3 There was a lot to do, so we agreed to help Mum prepare the party.
4 For my brother's birthday, I decided to buy him a music CD.
5 She's very reliable. If she promises to turn off your mobile.
6 I'm going to England to learn to speak English.
7 If you go to the cinema, you mustn't forget to turn off your mobile.
8 I haven't seen him for a long time, but I expect to see him at the wedding.

a) work late because she had to pick up her children.	e) do something, she always does it.
b) speak English.	f) see him at the wedding.
c) turn off your mobile.	g) buy him a music CD.
d) help him carry his suitcases.	h) help Mum prepare the party.

some of these verbs can also be followed by nouns or noun phrases.

يمكن أيضًا أن تتبع بعض هذه الأفعال بأسماء أو عبارات اسمية.

I offered the visitor a cup of tea.
She refused my offer.
Don't forget your bag.
He is learning sign language.

C page 87 Complete the sentences with the future continuous of the correct verb.

تمرين مهم ضمن القواعد

Visit يزور	wear يرتدي	arrive يصل	print يطبع	get يحصل	married متزوج	send يرسل

Example: Next year I will be spending a lot of time at my aunt and uncle's house.

1 My cousin will be getting married in the spring. She wants a big wedding.
2 Farah's mother-in-law will be visiting her next week.
3 The bride will be wearing a colourful dress.
4 Ahmed's print shop will be printing the invitations.
5 The food we ordered will be -arriving soon. I hope you're hungry.
6 We will be sending birth announcements next month.

❖ الواجب البيتي

offer يعرض	agree يوفق	promise يوعد	decide يقرر	forget ينسى

1. I offered to help him carry his suitcases
2. My father agreed to help Ahmed do his homework.
3. she promised to see him tomorrow.
4. We decided to go camping.
5. I forgot to tell him about the party.

A school trip – page 57 – رحلة مدرسية (مطلوب تحريري)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
artefact	قطعة أثرية	museum	متحف	relic	بقايا / رفات / أثر
guide	يرشد / دليل	furnishings	المفروشات	Ground floor	الطابق الأرضي
gallery	صالة عرض	national	وطني	cuneiform texts	النصوص المسمارية
collect	يجمع	government	حكومة	worksheet	ورقة عمل
Winged bull	الثور المجنح	precious	ثمين	Mesopotamian/ mesəpəˈteɪmiən/	بلاد ما بين النهرين
sculpture	فن النحت	dagger	خنجر	weapon	سلاح

cuneiform texts,



sculpture



Gold jewellery/bracelet



dagger/weapon .



The history of Iraq is the history of all humanity.

A Last week we went on a school trip to the National Museum of Iraq. I t is a very nice building and you feel calm there. A lot of artefacts and relics were first collected in a government building in Baghdad in 1922. In 1966, the Iraqi government moved the collection into the new two-storey museum building in Al- Salihiya. in Al-Karkh in Baghdad. This building is the National Museum of Iraq.

B We arrived at the museum at ten o'clock. When we went inside, a museum guide gave us some worksheets with information about things in the museum and questions to answer. We divided into groups of four. I was with Mazin. Osama and Jalal.

C We stayed first on the ground floor and went to the Assyrian and Babylonian galleries. We wanted to look at the Mesopotamian cuneiform texts, which date back to 1500 BC. We also looked at the Assyrian sculpture of the winged bull, Lamassu, with its f ive legs. Then we looked at the fine pieces of Assyrian jewellery that were found in the royal tombs at Namrud. My friend Mazin took brilliant photos in the Sumerian and Akkadian galleries. We also wandered in the ivory gallery, where we s aw some furnishings decorated with ivory, gold and precious stones.

D Once we had visited all the galleries and answered all the questions on our worksheets, we went t o t he cafeteria on t h e ground floor. Then we went to the gift shop. r bought a postcard and Jalal bought a beautiful cup with a golden pattern on i t .

E We had a fantastic time at the museum and we l earned a lot about many civilizations in Iraq. I want to come again soon to study the beautiful jewellery because one day I want to be a jewellery designer.

❖ Conjunctions and discourse markers:

while, as a result, as soon as, a little later, once, when, after that, because

Activity book – page 88

A page 88 **Look again at the text on Student's Book page 57. Answer the following comprehension questions.**

مهم جدا مطلوب تحريري ضمن قطع الكتاب

1 **When did the Museum get its first collection, and where was it stored?** متى حصل المتحف على مجموعته الأولى ، وأين تم تخزينها؟

In 1922. It was stored in a government building in Baghdad. عام 1922. تم تخزينه في مبنى حكومي في بغداد

2 **In which district is the National Museum of Iraq?** في أي منطقة يوجد متحف العراق الوطني؟

AJ-Salihiya, in AI-Karkh. الصالحية في الكرخ

3 **What is the name of the winged bull?** ما هو اسم الثور المجنح؟

Lamassu. لاماسو

4 **Where was the Assyrian jewellery found?** أين وجدت المجوهرات الآشورية؟

In the royal tombs at Namrud. في المقابر الملكية بنمرود.

5 **Which floor is the cafeteria on?** في أي طابق توجد الكافتيريا؟

The ground floor. الطابق الأرضي.

6 **What did Jalal buy from the gift shop?** ماذا اشترى جلال من محل الهدايا؟

A beautiful cup with th a golden pattern on it. كوب جميل عليه نقش ذهبي.

B page 88 **Choose the correct word or phrase for each sentence.**

تمرين مهم ضمن القواعد

1 ***While*** / *Because* I was eating breakfast, a bird flew through the kitchen window.
2 We had a very big lunch at my aunt's house. *Because* / ***As a result*** we all felt very full and fell asleep in front of the television!
3 Rachid arrived at my house first. *As soon as* / ***A little later*** Malek arrived with his cousin.
4 You must be very quick. *While* / ***As soon as*** you see two cards the same, you must shout "Snap!"
5 They all took photos of the castle. *As a result* / ***After that*** they got back in the bus.
6 I'm taking my drawing book to the museum ***because*** / *when* I want to copy the patterns on the tiles.
7 We all stopped talking *as a result* / ***when*** the teacher came into the classroom.
8 ***Once*** /*After* that the sun had gone down, we went for a walk by the sea.

Revision مراجعة

A page 89 **Complete the sentences with adjectives from the box. Write sentences with those you don't use. Your sentences should show the meanings of the adjectives.**

lively حيوي	forgetful كثير النسيان	bright ذكي	overweight بدين	smart ذكي	bald أصلع	slim نحيف	dark-complexioned داكن البشرة

تمرين مهم ضمن الvocabulary

1 He shouldn't eat so many sweets. He's a bit overweight.
2 My sister's very bright She always gets good marks.
3 You look very smart in those clothes.
4 My uncle has no hair – he's bald
5 He's very dark-complexioned. He looks as if he's been out in the sun.
6 he is very lively. He runs every day.
7 She forgot to do her homework; she is forgetful.
8 Huda doesn't eat much, that is why she is very slim.

B page 89 **Choose an adverb from the box to make the adjectives stronger. Use each only once.**

extremely الى ابعد حد	really حقا	incredibly بشكل لا يصدق	absolutely اطلاقا

مهم جداً

1 The comedy was incredibly funny.
2 The music was too loud and there were too many people. It was extremely noisy.
3 The new student is really nice. I hope you meet him soon.
4 The class was absolutely fascinating. I really learned a lot.

Now write two sentences (similar to those above).

5 The movie was incredibly funny. I couldn't stop laughing.
6 she was extremely noisy, so I asked her if she could be quieter.

C page 90 **Write the sentences again so that they mean the same. Use strong adjectives to replace the phrases in bold.**

تمرين مهم جداً ضمن ال vocabulary

1 I was very happy with my present.
I was thrilled with my present.
2 The bride was wearing a very beautiful dress.
The bride was wearing a gorgeous dress.
3 That film was very good.
That film was fantastic.
4 The food in this restaurant is very bad.
The food in this restaurant is terrible.
5 The craftsmen make very surprising shapes with their tools.
The craftsmen make amazing shapes with their tools.
6 We cooked all day for the wedding. It was very tiring.
We cooked all day for the wedding. It was exhausting.

Test

A page 90 **Complete the sentences with the correct forms.**

تمرين مهم ضمن القواعد

1 ______ you a glass of water?
a) Will I get b) Do I get c) Shall I get

2 He ______ that film because he doesn't like comedies.
a) shall like b) won't like c) likes

3 Nadia thinks she ______ to England next year.
a) will go b) has gone c) goes

4 ________ to come to the beach with us?
a) Would you like b) Shall you like c) Will you like

B page 91 **Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.**

Wash	send	clean	cut	paint	fix

تمرين مهم ضمن القواعد

1 Noor had her hair cut yesterday.
2 Will you have the car washed? It's very dirty.
3 I think we should get the kitchen painted. This colour is terrible.
4 We must get the computer fixed. It's been broken for over a week.
5 Mother wants to have the house cleaned before the wedding party.
6 Rashid had flowers sent to his grandmother for her birthday.

C page 91 **Choose the correct word in brackets to complete each sentence.**

تمرين مهم ضمن القواعد

1 Few people know how to fix their own computers. (Few/Either)
2 You can take either train to London. (either/both)
3 Both parents must sign this form. (Both/Few)
4 some students have to write this essay again, but you don't. (All/Some)
5 The teacher gave us more homework to do during the holidays. (little, more)
6 All children should go to school and get a good education. (All/Either)

D page 91 **Match the phrases and write the sentences in your notebook using the future continuous.**

1 Sorry, I (not come) to	rainforests next week.
2 Issam (not/work) this week	the ceiling tomorrow.
3 My grandmother (stay)	your team in the tournament.
4 The painters (paint)	your party. I'll be away.
5 The class (study)	with us for a month.
6 Our team (play)	because he's on holiday.

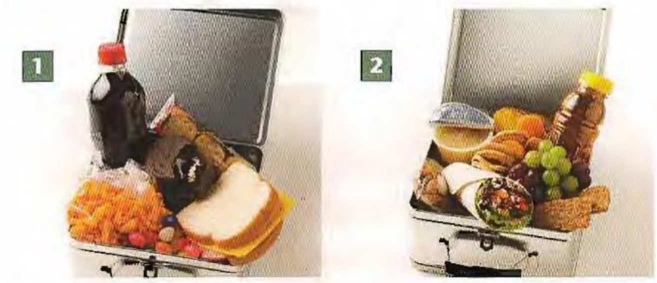
1 Sorry, I will not/won't be coming to your party. I'll be away.
2 Issam will not/won't be working this week because he's on holiday.
3 My grandmother will be staying with us for a month.
4 The painters will be painting the ceiling tomorrow.
5 The class will be studying rainforests next week.
6 Our ream will be playing your ream in the tournament.

A healthy lunch – page 62 – غداء صحي

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
nutritionist	اخصائي تغذيه	bone	عظم	enough	كافية
yoghurt	الزبادي / لبن	muscle	عضلة	taste	المذاق
dairy /ˈdeərɪ/	ألبان	protein	بروتين	calorie	السعرات الحرارية
calcium	الكالسيوم	vitamin	فيتامين	energy value	قيمة الطاقة
diet	حمية	chemical /ˈkemɪkl/	المواد الكيميائية	Products	منتجات
Desserts/ dɪˈzɜːts/	الحلويات	sweet	حلو	fruit	فاكهة
health	صحتك	eat	يأكل	food	طعام

صوت 65

- Work with a partner. Which meal do you think is healthier? Why?



الحل
Picture 2.
Why is it better? Well, first of all, this lunch has food from more food groups than the other one. Secondly, the lunch in picture 1 includes food that can be bad for your health.

- Guess what Wijdan will talk about next. صوت 65 Then listen and check.

  - How to bake bread.
  - Food that is bad for you.
  - How exercise can make you healthy.

❖ Determiners: محددات

both, some, few, fewer, all, a lot of, many, too many, too much, enough

❖ Quantifiers tell us something about the amount or quantity of something (a noun).
1. محددو الكمية (Quantifiers): محددو الكمية تخبرنا شيئاً عن الكمية أو كمية شيء ما.

❖ Quantifiers can be a single word (e.g. some) or a phrase (e.g. a lot of).
يمكن أن تكون محددات الكم كلمة واحدة (على سبيل المثال، بعض) أو عبارة (على سبيل المثال. الكثير من).

We have two types of Quantifiers

➢ **Simple Quantifiers**: all, both, enough, few, fewer, little, less, many, much, some.

➢ **Complex Quantifiers**: a few, a little, a lot of, lots of, too many, too much.

القاعدة ❖

أسم (معدود أو غير معدود) ..... + محدد الكمية

الترتيب

Quantifier محدد + adverb ظرف + adjective صفة + noun اسم

- Too Many
- Many
- all + (أسم جمع مضاف s) أسم معدود
- few
- fewer

- a lot of
- some + معدود وغير معدود
- enough

- Too Much + أسم غير معدود

1. كيف أفرق بين المعدود والغير المعدود

1. الاسم المعدود يمكن عدها وفي العادة يحتوي على (s) في نهايته أي أسماء تتحول الى الجمع بإضافة (s)

Vegetable = vegetables

أنتبه: بعض الاسماء تكون شاذة في الجمع

- أما تتغير شكلها مثل (foot = feet)
- أو نفس الكلمة بنفس الصيغة أو الشكل تستخدم كمفرد وكجمع في نفس الوقت مثل (people = people)
- يمكن أستخدام أدوات النكرة معهم (an apple)

2. الاسم الغير القابل للعد: لا يمكن عدها ويعامل معاملة المفرد (rice, cheese, water, bread, toothpaste)

- الاسم الغير القابل للعد أيضا فيها أسماء لا تتغير صيغتها او شكلها (money)
- أنتبه نقطة مهمة أيضا لا يمكن أستخدام أدوات النكرة(a/an) معهم

❖ Both

Both + Noun اسم + and + Noun اسم

Both fruit and vegetables have a lot of vitamins.

❖ لاحظ الأمثلة التالية من الكتاب

- tomatoes have a lot of vitamin C.
- The crisps have a lot of fat.
- sweet desserts often have a lot of calories.
- It is important to drink a lot.

- Some teenagers don't get enough fruit and vegetables in their diet.
- they are not all in the same food groups.

- it is not a good idea to eat too many sweet desserts.
- There are many things on the first tray that can be bad for you.
- there are too many calories in your diet.
- Choose something that has few calories.
- fruit and vegetables have few calories.
- Vegetables taste good if you don't cook them too much.

❖ الشكل في الامتحان تمرين c هو الي يستخدم نصا صحيفة 92

- انتبه لما هو خارج القوس هل هو معدود ام غير معدود (تحتوي على s فهو معدود)

1 There are (too many/ too much) calories in sweets, soft drinks and cakes. (choose أختر)
3 Not all fats are bad, but crisps have (too much/ too many) fat of the wrong kind. (choose أختر)

4 If you want something sweet, choose something with (fewer / few) calories than chocolate. لاحظ هنا مقارنة

5 Both …… fruit and vegetables have a lot of vitamins. (complete with a suitable determiner أكمل بمحدد مناسب)

Activity book – page 92

A page 92 Complete the definitions with the words in the box.

تمرين مهم

Diet حمية	vitamins فيتامين	protein بروتين	calcium الكالسيوم / ˈdeərɪ /	dairy products منتجات الألبان	calories سعرات حرارية /ˈkæl**ə**rɪz/

1 Vitamins are things your body needs to be healthy. Many are named after a letter of the alphabet.
2 Calcium is needed for healthy teeth and bones.
3 Dairy products are foods made from milk.
4 Food with a lot of calories can make people fat.
5 Protein is needed to build strong muscles.
6 Diet means the food people regularly eat.

B page 92 66 صوت Listen again and answer the questions.

تمرين مهم

1 What is a good thing to drink all day? water or fruit juice
2 What do chemicals add to soft drinks? colour
3 What do crisps have a lot of? fat
4 What can make you overweight? too many sweet desserts

C page 92 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

Fewer اقل	many العديد	too many كثير جدا	too much كثير جدا	both enough كلاهما كاف	all كل	a lot of كثيرا من

1 There are too many calories in sweets, soft drinks and cakes.
2 Many teenagers don't eat enough fruit and vegetables.
3 Not all fats are bad, but crisps have too much fat of the wrong kind.
4 If you want something sweet, choose something with fewer calories than chocolate.
5 Both fruit and vegetables have a lot of vitamins.

D page 93 **Write a paragraph of between 90 and 100 words about your eating habits and preferences.**

اكتب فقرة من 90 إلى 100 كلمة حول عاداتك الغذائية وتفضيلاتك.

I love eating a lot and honestly, I am a big fan of a lot of vegetables, meats, cheesy, and hot foods. For breakfast I usually have some eggs, milk or may be dairy products. For lunch I vary my choices between vegetarian food, sea food, and animal food. I try to avoid spicy foods as much as I could. And for dinner I might have diary products or some kinds of fast food like a sandwich. Sometimes, I have snacks between meals as well. I guess the foods that I like are just healthy choices that the average person eats during a daily breakfast, lunch and dinner.

حب الأكل كثيرًا وبصراحة، أنا معجب كثيرًا بالخضروات واللحوم والجبن والأطعمة الساخنة. في وجبة الإفطار، عادة ما أتناول بعض البيض أو الحليب أو قد يكون من منتجات الألبان. بالنسبة للغداء، أقوم بتغيير اختياراتي بين الأطعمة النباتية والمأكولات البحرية والأطعمة الحيوانية. أحاول تجنب الأطعمة الغنية بالتوابل قدر استطاعتي. وبالنسبة للعشاء، قد أتناول منتجات يومية أو بعض أنواع الوجبات السريعة مثل الساندويتش. في بعض الأحيان، أتناول وجبات خفيفة بين الوجبات أيضًا. أعتقد أن الأطعمة التي أحبها هي مجرد خيارات صحية يأكلها الشخص العادي خلال الإفطار والغداء والعشاء يوميًا.

Have a good night! – page 63 – عمت مساءً (مطلوب تحريري)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
cure	دواء	sleeplessness	الأرق	hurt	يتأذى
brain	مخ	need	يحتاج	Waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
Stay up	يبقى مستيقظا	Sleep expert	خبير نوم	Teenagers /ˈtiːneɪdʒəz/	المراهقون
Worry / ˈwʌrɪ/	قلق	tired	متعب	scientists /ˈsaɪəntɪsts/	العلماء
stage	مرحلة	beat	ينبض	noise /nɔɪz/	الضوضاء

- **Discuss these questions with a partner. Then read the magazine article and compare your ideas.**
  أي سؤال يخص القطعة مهم ومطلوب تحريري نصا

- **Why is sleep important?** لماذا النوم مهم؟
  to grow stay strong and feel much better in the morning. لتنمو وتبقى قويًا وتشعر بتحسن كبير في الصباح.

- **How much sleep do teenagers need?** كم من النوم يحتاج المراهقون؟
  eight hours per night ثماني ساعات في الليلة

HEALTH ADVICE FOR TEENAGERS

A GOOD NIGHT'S SLEEP

Do you think sleep is a waste of time? Do you like to stay up late to do homework, talk with friends, or play computer games?
We asked Or. Ibrahim Ansari, a sleep expert, if sleep was really important for teenagers.

The need for sleep

Dr. Ansari said he was worried about many of the teenagers he saw in his office. He said that many of them slept for only six- or seven-hours a night. 'Teenagers should sleep for an average of eight hours per night Your body needs sleep to grow and stay strong. If you haven't had enough sleep, you can get hurt if you do sport. Your brain needs sleep too.' Dr. Ansari told us that many of the teenagers he saw got bad marks because they were often tired.

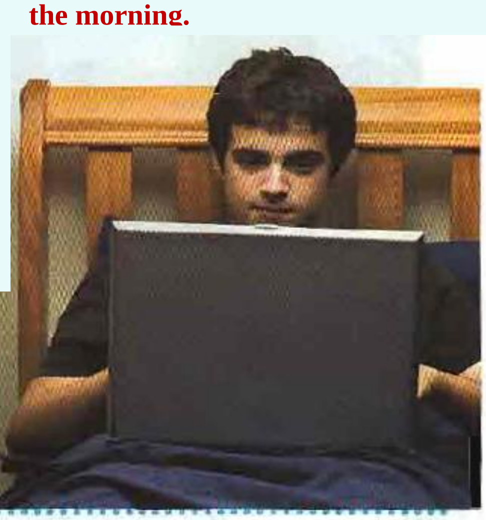
Different stages of sleep

Scientists still don't know everything abou1 sleep, but they know that there are five stages of sleep. We asked Dr. Ansari what they were. 'The first stage Is when you fall asleep. You relax and your heart starts to beat more slowly. The second stage is light sleep. During this time, you wake up very easily if you hear a noise. In the third and fourth stages, you sleep more deeply. It's difficult for someone to wake you up. The last stage is the time when you dream. Your body is relaxed. but your eyes move. ·

Cures for sleeplessness

Sometimes you go to bed, but can't get to sleep. We asked Dr. Ansari what you could do. 'First of all. try to go to bed at the same time every night. Don't do anything exciting just before bed, like exercising or watching on adventure film.' Dr. Ansari told us you could drink a glass of warm milk if you really couldn't fall asleep. He said many teenagers found drinking milk relaxing.

Now that you know what to do, have a good night's sleep. You'll feel much better in the morning.





A page 93 Write short answers to these questions about the article on page 63 of the Student's Book.

الأسئلة التالية مهمة جداً في التحريري ضمن قطع الكتاب

1 How much sleep should teenagers get per night? كم من النوم يجب أن يحصل عليه المراهقون كل ليلة؟

Eight hours. ثماني ساعات.

2 What can happen if you don't get enough sleep? ماذا يمكن أن يحدث إذا لم تحصل على قسط كافٍ من النوم؟

You can get hurt or get bad marks. يمكن أن تتأذى أو تحصل على علامات سيئة.

3 During what stage of sleep do you dream? في أي مرحلة من مراحل النوم تحلم؟

During the last stage of sleep. خلال المرحلة الأخيرة من النوم.

4 What should you not do before going to sleep? ما الذي لا يجب عليك فعله قبل النوم؟

Exercise or watch adventure films. التمرن أو مشاهد أفلام مغامرات.

5 What do many teenagers find relaxing? ماذا الذي يجده العديد من المراهقين مريحاً؟

Drinking a glass of warm milk. شرب كوب من الحليب الدافئ.

B page 93 Discuss in pairs. Do you think Dr Ansari would be worried about you? Discuss Dr Ansari's advice with a partner. Do you agree with it? Will you do something about it?

نقاش في مجموعات زوجيه. هل تعتقد أن الدكتور أنصاري سيقلق عليك؟ ناقش نصيحة الدكتور أنصاري مع شريك. هل توافق على ذلك؟ هل ستفعل شيئًا حيال ذلك؟

C page 94 Report the statements below. Then check your answers in the Student's Book.

تمرين مهم جداً

1 'Is sleep really important for teenagers?'
We asked Dr. Ansari if sleep was really important for teenagers.
2 'I'm worried about many of the teenagers I see in my office.'
Dr. Ansari said that he was worried about many of teenagers he saw in his office.
3 'Many of the teenagers I see get bad marks because they are often tired.'
Dr. Ansari told us that many of teenagers he saw got bad marks because they were often tired.

D page 94 Change these reported statements into direct speech.

تمرين مهم جداً

1 He said many of them slept for only six or seven hours per night.
'Many of them sleep for only six or seven hours per night.'
2 We asked Dr. Ansari what you could do.
'What can you do?' (Note that 'you' is used in this text instead of 'one' or 'people' or 'teenagers'.
3 He said many teenagers found drinking milk relaxing.
'Many teenagers find drinking milk relaxing.'

E page 94 Complete the sentences. Choose the correct reporting verbs from the box and write the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

تمرين مهم

Asked	told	said

1 Last night, Dad said that we couldn't watch that TV programme. (not watch)
2 Nisrin told me she was not/wasn't hungry. (not be)
3 asked Fuad if he wanted to come to the beach with us. (want)
4 The teacher told us to stand up if we didn't have our books. (not have)
5 Sami told us he was thrilled by his trip to Egypt. (be)

❖ Reported speech الكلام المنقول

❖ Use الاستخدام

- Use reported speech to tell another person what somebody said. but we don't use the exact words because we focus on the message rather than the exact words.

استخدم الكلام المنقول لإخبار شخص آخر بما قاله شخص ما. لكننا لا نستخدم الكلمات نفسها لأننا نركز على الرسالة بدلاً من الكلمات نفسها.

❖ Form الصيغة

Introduce reported statements with tell or say.

قدم الكلام المنقول مع say أو tell.

Introduce reported questions with ask. These reporting verbs are always followed by an object - a noun or a pronoun.

قدم الأسئلة المنقولة مع asked. أفعال النقل هذه دائمًا ما يتبعها مفعول به - اسم أو ضمير.

❖ Reported statements الجمل الخبرية المنقولة

- Ali: 'I am tired.'
  Ali said (that) he was tired.
- Mum: 'It's time to get up, Bilal!'
  Mum told Bilal (that) it was time to get up.

❗ 'that' can be left out. That اختيارية

Change the tense of some, but not all verbs: غيّر صيغة زمن بعض الأفعال وليس كلها

Usually, the tense goes back in time: this is called back shifting.

عادة، يعود الزمن إلى الوراء: وهذا ما يسمى التحول العكسي للزمن.

Direct speech كلام مباشر	reported speech كلام منقول
present simple مضارع بسيط	past simple ماضي بسيط
can يستطيع	could
should يجب	should
Could يستطيع	could
Am/is	was

1. الأفعال الناقصة (الشرطية) (will, could, can, shall) ⟵ (would, could, should)

1. Dad: 'Faisal can go with you.'
   Dad told us Faisal could go with us.
2. Mum: 'You should eat more fruit.'
   Mum said I should eat more fruit.
3. Sara: 'I couldn't sleep last night.'
   Sara said she couldn't sleep last night.

❖ الجمل التي تبدأ ب(do/does) أو أذاة استفهام و(do)؛ يتم حذفهم ويحول الفعل الى ماضي هذا في السؤال المنقول
ولكن المطلوب من كتاب الرابع هو إن تم استخدامهما كمنفي (don't/doesn't) حوله الى منفي في الماضي البسيط (didn't) فقط

Khalid: 'I don't want to go to bed.'
Khalid said he didn't want to go to bed.

❖ Change the pronouns. غير الضمائر

ركز بهذا الجزء جيدا، لا أستطيع عمل جداول؛ لان الموضوع يعتمد على السياق.

- We change the first-person pronouns (I, me, us, we) according to the subject of the reporting verb into third person pronouns (he, she, they, him, her, them). if the reporting verb refers to third person pronouns.

نقوم بتغيير ضمائر الشخص الأول (I,me,us,we) وفقًا لفاعل فعل النقل (say/tell/asked)
إلى ضمائر الشخص الثالث (he, she, they, him, her, them). إذا كان فعل النقل يشير إلى ضمائر الشخص الثالث.

Ali: 'I am tired.'
Ali said (that) he was tired.

- They (I, me, us, we) do not change if the reporting verb refers to first person pronouns (I, we);

لا يتغيرون (I, me, us, we) إذا كان فعل النقل يشير إلى ضمائر الشخص الأول (أنا، نحن)؛

1. I said, "I am sorry"
   I said I was sorry.

- I > he or she
- me > him or her
- we > they
- us > them

- Note: Third person pronouns (he, she, it, they, him, his, her, them) do not change at all in reported speech.

ملاحظة: ضمائر الشخص الثالث (he, she, it, they, him, his, her, them) لا تتغير على الإطلاق في الكلام المنقول.

- If a second person pronoun (you, your, yours) is the object of the main sentence, they change into first person singular and plural (I, me, us, we, mine, our, ours) in indirect speech.

1. Dad: 'Faisal can go with you.'
   Dad told us Faisal could go with us.

- Second person pronoun in direct speech (i.e. you) is changed according to "object" of reporting verb.

يتم تغيير ضمير الشخص الثاني في الكلام المباشر (أي أنت you) وفقًا لـ "المفعول به" من فعل النقل.

1. Mum: 'You should eat more fruit.'
   Mum told me I should eat more fruit.

You = I   you = we

❖ Reported questions: الأسئلة المنقولة

- They become statements when they are reported. يصبحون جمل خبرية عندما يتم نقلهم

1. Marwa: 'What time is it?'
   Marwa asked me what time it was.

1. في الأسئلة المنقولة لا نستخدم صيغة السؤال للفعل. (بمعنى بعد اداة الاستفهام يأتي فاعل ومن تم الفعل) الفاعل يسبق الفعل المساعد ولهذا نضع نقطة في نهاية الجملة (جملة خبرية). الفعل يمكن أن يأتي قبل أو بعد المفعول به

1. Marwa: 'What time is it'
   Marwa asked me what time it was.

- الشكل كالتالي

- What time is it? (write the direct question as a reported question begin with: He asked me)
  He asked me what time it was.

❖ Use if in yes/no questions.

this type of question is reported by using 'ask' + 'if / whether' + clause:

يتم نقل هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام عبارة ask + if / whether + clause

نستخدم (if) مع أسئلة (yes, no) المنقولة: الأسئلة التي تبدأ بفعل مساعد (are is, am, does, did, can, do, will, have,)
whether أكثر رسمية بقليل وعادة تستخدم في الكتابة ولكن if مألوف أكثر

Students: 'Is Abdulla ill?' (Reported question)
They asked me if Abdulla was ill.

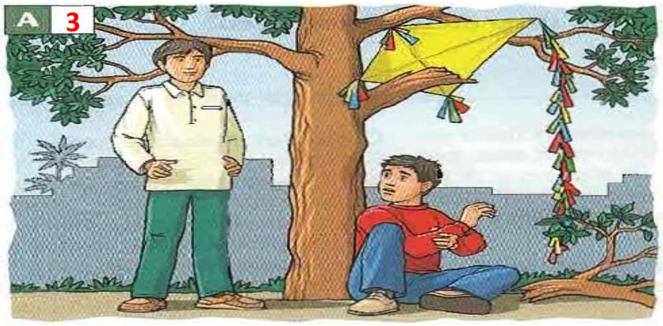
How do you feel? - page 64 – كيف تشعر

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Fall off	يسقط من على	headache /ˈhedeɪk/	صداع الراس	feel	يشعر
throat	حلق/حنجرة	fever /ˈfiːvə/	حمى	Probably	المحتمل
flu	أنفلونزا	bandage /ˈbændɪdʒ/	ضمادة	sprain	التواء
sunburn	ضربة شمس	Hurt(v) /hɜːt/	جرح	Sound (v)	يبدو
Cough/kɒf/	يسعل	Ankle /ˈæŋk(ə)l/	كاحل	hurt	يؤذي
kite	طائرة ورقية	ophthalmologist/ɒfθælˈmɒlədʒɪst/	طبيب عيون	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة
bed	سرير	Sore throat /sɔː/	إلتهاب الحلق	accident	حادث
I can manage	استطيع تدبر أمري	Bruised and swollen	كدمات ومنتفخة	burn	يحرق

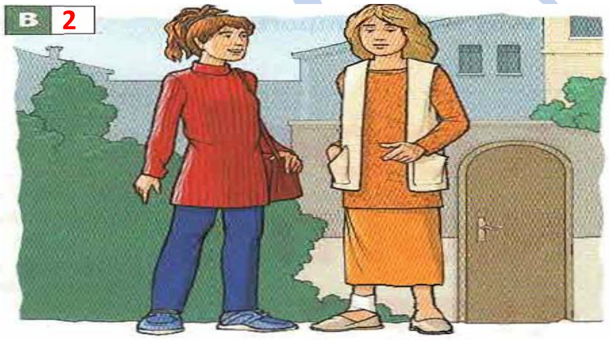
صوت 67

- صوت 67 Listen to the dialogues and put the pictures in order. Number them 1-4.

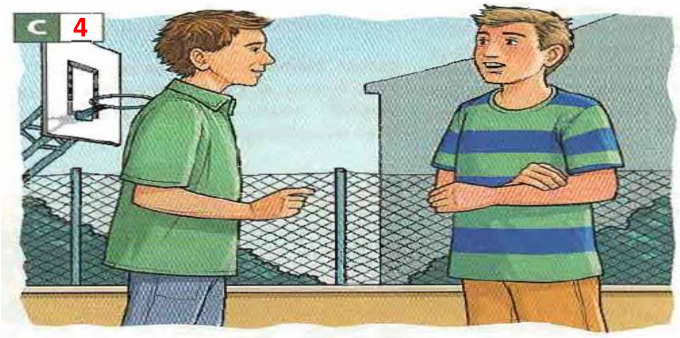
A 3



B 2



C 4



D 1



a / A — You should see the doctor to make sure you haven't broken it.

b — You ought to take an umbrella.

c — You shouldn't eat much chocolate.

d / D — You could take some aspirin. it might help.

e / b — You shouldn't walk on it.

F / C — You could try using after-sun cream.

- sound and feel. sound is often used to mean seem.
  - There's a film on TV tonight that sounds good/awful.
  - We're moving to a new house. I feel excited/happy/worried.

السؤال عن الحال

- What is the matter? ما خطبك؟
- Are you all right? هل انت بخير؟
- What happened to you? ماذا حدث لك
- You sound ill. How are you feeling this morning? تبدو مريضا. كيف تشعر هذا الصباح؟
- I don't feel well. لا أشعر بأنني بخير

السؤال عن الحال بإستخدام (is/ are)	السؤال عن الحال باستخدام (do/does)
How + is / Are + She (Huda) / he (Ahmed) / you / they ?	How + Does / Do + She (Nadia) / he (Yahya) / they Hussein and Muhammed / you + feel ?
How are you? كيف حالك؟ = I'm fine How is she? كيف حالها؟ = she isn't fine. How is Mohammed? = he feels sick. How is Hussein? = Hussein is sick. How is Yahya?	How do you feel? كيف تشعر؟ = I have a headache. How does Ahmed feel? كيف يشعر أحمد؟ = he has a broken arm. How does your father feel? كيف يشعر والدك؟ = he has a cold.

الإجابة عن الأمراض باستخدام(have/has)

الجمع	المفرد
I / We / You / They + have / had + أسم المرض .	He / she / it + has / had + أسم المرض .
I have / had a toothache. أنا مصاب(لدي) بوجع الأسنان Ahmed and Ali(they) have / had a broken arm. You have / had a cold.	she (Huda) has / had a toothache. هدى لديها وجع الأسنان Ahmed(he) has / had a broken arm. احمد لديه يد مكسورة Ali has / had a cold. علي مصاب بالزكام

Activity book – page 95

A page 95 Complete the table with words from the box.

I have a	Sore throat headache. Fever sunburn
I have	Flu (the flu)
I sprained I broke	My ankle
My arm	hurts

Sunburn	hurts	sprained
Flu	sore-throat	headache
Broke	fever	

Note: flu is short for **influenza** and we can't use '**a**' before it. We can say I have **the flu**,

B page 95 Write five sentences using five of the words from the box.

sore throat	headache	fever	flu	ankle	sprain	bandages	sunburn	branch

1. I have a headache.
2. I have the flu.
3. Ahmed had a fever yesterday.
4. I sprained my ankle last month.
5. A: Ouch! I cut myself. B: You should put a bandage on it?

❖ Ways of giving advice: طرق إعطاء النصائح
➢ Models: should/shouldn't, could, ought

❖ Form

Subject فاعل	Affirmative مثبت	Negative نفي	Infinitive فعل مصدر
I / You He / She/ It We / You / They	Should Could Ought to	Shouldn't Couldn't Oughtn't to	go

❖ Question

	Subject فاعل	Infinitive فعل مصدر
Should	I / you he / she/ it we / you / they	go

❖ Use

➢ Use should/shouldn't ought to and could to give advice.

أستخدم should/shouldn't ought to and could لإعطاء النصائح

- You should wear a hat in the sun.
- We ought to do some work before going out.
- You shouldn't go to school today.
- You could try these pills. They may help.

➢ Use should to ask for advice.

- Should I bring my umbrella?

Note: could is not as strong as should or ought to.

ملاحظة: could ليس بنفس قوة should أو ought to

❖ الواجب البيتي

Give these people advice.

مهم جدا في الامتحان التحريري

1 I have an exam tomorrow. (give an advice أعطي نصيحة)
You ought to study hard.

2 My eyes hurt.
You should see doctor.

3 I think I've broken my leg.
You shouldn't walk on it./ You ought to go to the hospital.

4 I have a stomach ache.
You shouldn't eat too much cake/sweets.

5 I have a fever.
You could try these pills حبوب.

❖ الشكل في الامتحان

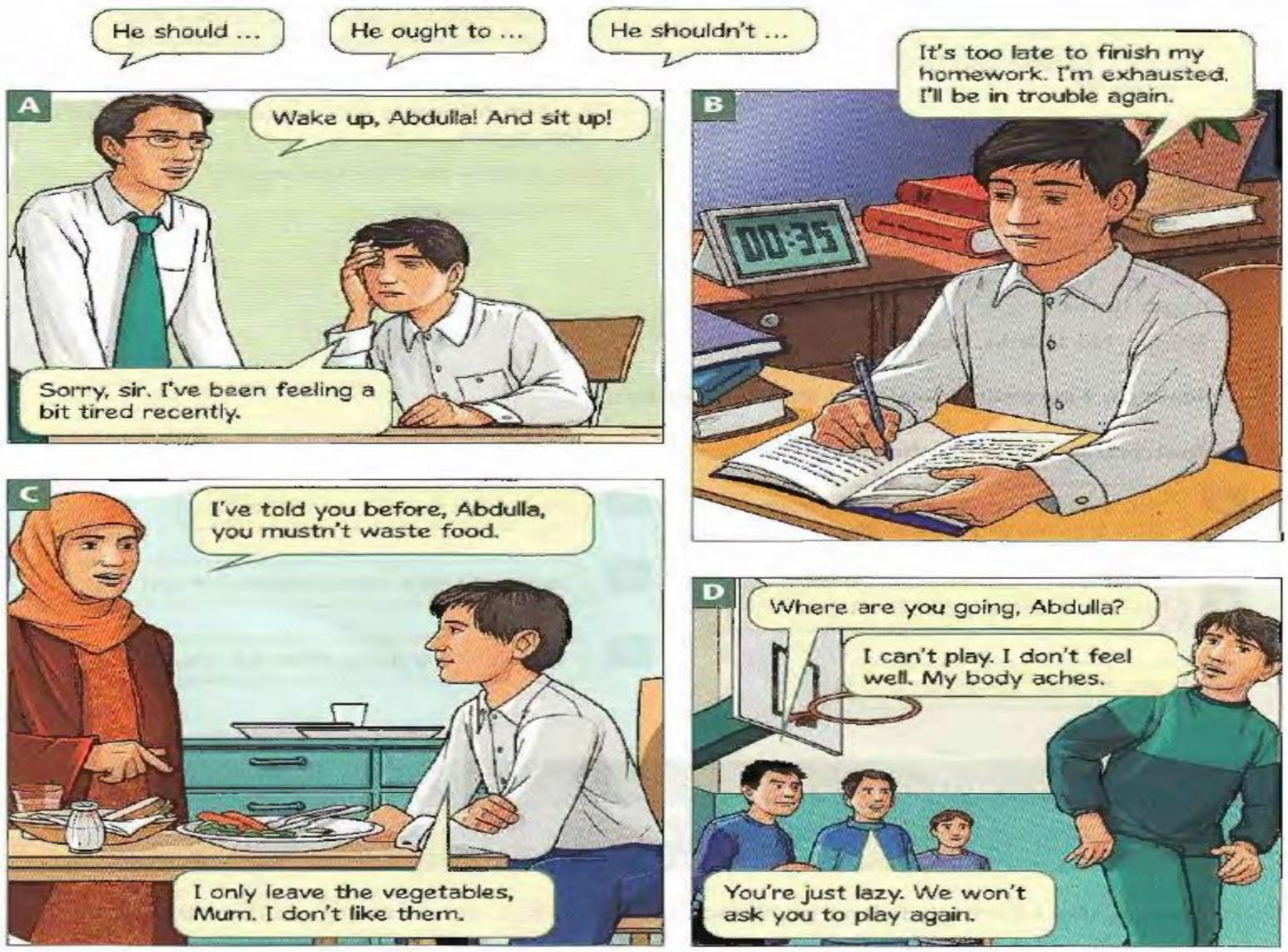
❖ قد يجبرك الأستاذ على استخدام معين بين قوسين فأنتبه. تابع معي جيدا عزيزي الطالب.

1. **wear a hat in the sun. (Give an advice أعطي نصيحة)**
   You should wear a hat in the sun.
2. **Do some work before going out. (Give an advice. Use: Ought to) هنا انت مجبر الإجابة ب**
   You ought to do some work before going out.
3. **My eyes hurt. (Give an Advice)**
   You should see a doctor (ophthalmologist/ ɒfθælˈmɒlədʒɪst)
4. **It seems that you've broken your arm. You (should/ shouldn't) go to the hospital. (choose اختر)**
5. **You are eating too much sweets. You (ought to / oughtn't to) do so. (choose)**
6. **We (ought to / ought) do some work before going out.**
7. **You should (study / studying) hard. (choose) هنا التركيز على الفعل المجرد يجب أن تكون فاهم إعطاء النصائح بالكامل**

A check-up – page 66 – تفحص(تحقق)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
blood	دم	lifestyle	أسلوب الحياة	recently	مؤخرا
exhausted	مرهق	Balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	raw	نيئة (غير مطبوخ)
pills	حبوب	That depends on	هذا يعتمد على	lazy	كسلان
aches	يوجع / يؤلم	Change (v)	يغير	midnight	منتصف الليل
evening	مساء	raw vegetables	الخضار النيئة	piece	قطعة
earlier	مبكرا	Good idea	فكره جيده	waste	يبذر

صوت 68



❖ Determiners: enough, not enough

❖ Models: should/shouldn't, ought to, could

Have you been getting enough sleep?
You should try to get eight hours.
You shouldn't do your homework late at night.
You could do your homework in the afternoon, or you could do more work at the weekend
If you have a balanced diet, you shouldn't need pills.
You should try to eat five things from the fruit and vegetable group every day.
You should try to get eight hours' sleep.
You ought to go to bed earlier

A page 96 صوت 69 **Listen again and mark the advice the doctor gives Abdulla true (T) or false (F).**

1 You should try to get ten hours' sleep. **F** (You should try to get eight hours' sleep.)

2 You ought to go to bed earlier. **T**

3 You ought to stay up after midnight. **F** (You ought to go to bed earlier.)

4 You shouldn't do your homework late at night. **T**

5 You could do your homework in the evening. **F** (You could do your homework in the afternoon or at the weekend.)

6 You could do more work at the weekend. **T**

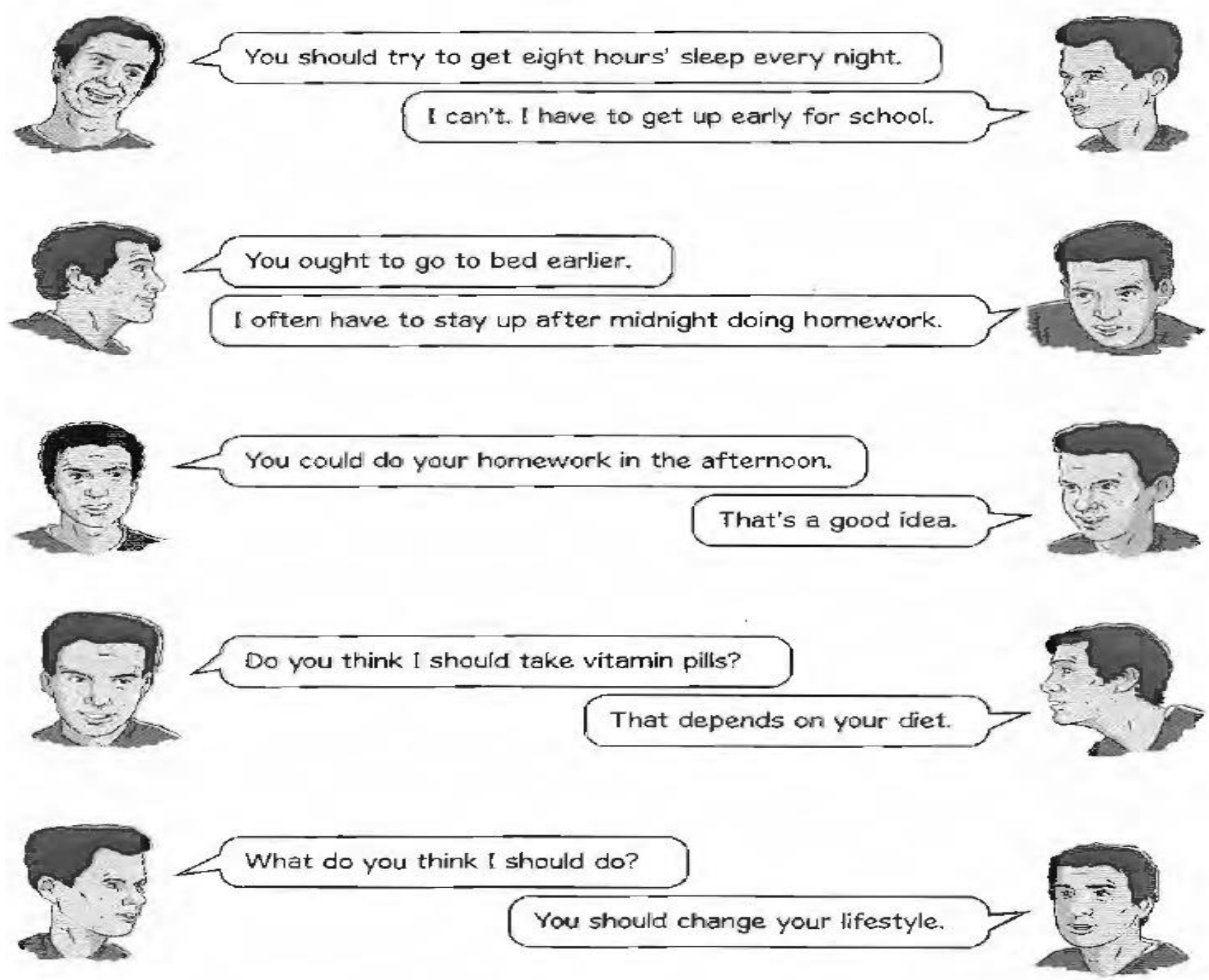
7 If you have a balanced diet, you shouldn't need pills. **T**

8 You shouldn't try raw vegetables. **F** (You should try raw vegetables.)

9 You should eat four pieces of fruit and vegetable every day. **F** (You should ear five pieces of fruit and vegetable every day.)

10 You can go for a walk in the park every day. **T**

B page 97 صوت 70 **Listen and repeat. Then work in pairs and role-play a conversation between a doctor and a patient.**



❖ الواجب البيتي

Write a paragraph about your lifestyle (50-75 words) in your notebooks.
Important things in considering one's lifestyle
sleep, exercise, diet

Do you think you have a healthy lifestyle?
How do you exercise?
How much sleep do you get?
When do you do your homework?

Write a paragraph about your lifestyle. أكتب فقرة عن أسلوب حياتك

I need a balanced diet to maintain a healthy lifestyle. In order to do so, I should sleep well, do some sports and have a balance diet. regarding sleep, I always make sure that I get enough sleep. One ought to sleep early. To have a health body I do fitness training. Finally, to have a good diet I prefer eating vegetables.

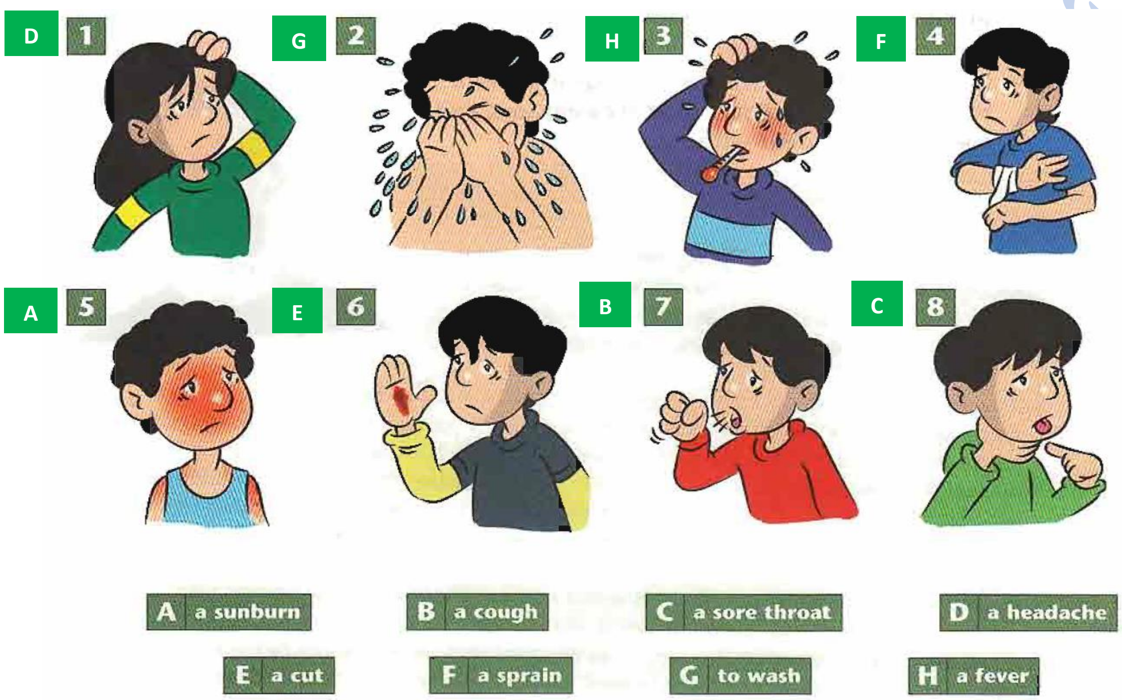
أحتاج إلى نظام غذائي متوازن للحفاظ على اسلوب حياة صحي. من أجل القيام بذلك، يجب أن أنام بشكل جيدً وأمارس بعض الألعاب الرياضية واتبع نظام غذائي متوازن. فيما يتعلق بالنوم، أحرص دائمًا على الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم. يجب على المرء أن ينام باكرا. للحصول على جسم صحي أقوم بتدريب اللياقة البدنية. أخيرًا، للحصول على نظام غذائي جيد أفضل أكل الخضروات.

At the chemist's – page 67 – في الصيدلية

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
cough syrup / kɒf ˈsɪrəp/	شراب السعال	plaster	لصقة / ضمادة	fever	حمى
throat lozenges/ˈlɒzɪndʒɪz/	حبوب دواء محلاة لالتهاب الحلق	aspirin	أسبرين	sunburn	ضربة شمس
sore throat / sɔː/	إلتهاب الحلق	cough	سعال	headache	وجع الراس
after-sun cream	كريم بعد التعرض للشمس	A cut	جرح	daughter	بنت

صوت 71

- Match the pictures with the words below.



- صوت 71 listen to some people at the chemist's and answer these questions:

Who ... Yassir … should see a doctor?
Noura … is buying something for a child?
Sultan … needs advice?
Layla … Doesn't get what she wants?
Adnan …. has had an accident?



❖ Revision: Reported speech الكلام المنقول

A page 98 72 صوت **Listen to the conversations again and answer the questions. Write short answers.**

Conversation 1

1 How long has the girl been coughing?
Since the day before.

2 How often should she take the cough syrup?
Three times a day.

Conversation 2

3 When will the chemist have cherry lozenges?
In the afternoon.

4 What does the woman buy?
Lemon lozenges.

Conversation 3

5 What is the first thing Sultan should do?
Put ice on the sunburn.

6 What does he buy?
A bruise.

Conversation 4

7 What does Adnan have on his head?
After-sun cream.

8 How did he get hurt?
He fell down the stairs.

Conversation 5

9 When did Yassir last buy lozenges?
Two days ago.

10 Why doesn't he know if he has a fever?
He doesn't have a thermometer.

B page 99 **Look at what the customers say. Use reported speech to rewrite the sentences.**



I want some cough syrup.



She said she wanted some cough syrup.

It's for my daughter

She said it was for her daughter.



I have a sore throat.



She told me she had a sore throat.

Do you have any throat lozenges?

She asked me if I had any throat lozenges.



I need some advice.



He said he needed some advice.

It hurts a lot.

He said/told me it hurt a lot.





❖ الواجب البيتي (انشاء عن حالة مرضية)

Write between 50 and 75 words about a situation in which you or someone in your family needed medicine. Use your notebook.

اكتب ما بين 50 و75 كلمة عن موقف احتجت فيه أنت أو أحد أفراد أسرتك إلى الدواء.

Last year I found my mother unconscious in the kitchen. My mother has diabetes. And she should always keep her medicine nearby. I tried looking for her insulin syringe but couldn't find it. So, I immediately called an ambulance. Once they arrived, I informed them of her illness so that they be aware of her condition. After a few minutes she started to wake up. I was very worried about her that day.

في العام الماضي وجدت والدتي فاقدة للوعي في المطبخ. أمي مصابة بداء السكري. وعليها دائمًا أن تحتفظ بدوائها قريبا. حاولت البحث عن حقنة الأنسولين الخاص بها ولكني لم أجدها. لذلك، اتصلت على الفور بسيارة الإسعاف. بمجرد وصولهم، أبلغتهم بمرضها حتى يكونوا على دراية بحالتها. بعد عدة دقائق بدأت تستيقظ. كنت قلقاً جدا عليها في ذلك اليوم.

Take my advice! – page 68 – خذ بنصيحتي

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
stretch	يمد / امتداد	equipment	معدات	elbow	كوع
pads	واقي ضمادة	Knee pads	واقي الركب	dehydrated	مجفف (فقد الماء من الجسد)
injure	يجرح	Safety	أمان	procedure	إجراء / عملية
injury	جرح	careless	غير مبالي	painful	مؤلم
impatient	نافذ الصبر	Warm up	احماء / يحمي	avoid	يتجنب / يتفادى
fearless	جريء / شجاع	depopulated	مهجور	impolite	غير مهذب / فظ
Affixes	اضافات	Prefixes	بادئات(im)	suffixes	لواحق

❖ Affixes: Prefixes and suffixes
❖ الإضافات(اللواصق): بادئات ولواحق

Affixes: Prefixes and suffixes Grammar and functions reference p.98

- Affixes are letters that are added to words to make new words.
  اللواصق هي الأحرف التي تضاف إلى الكلمات لتكوين كلمات جديدة.
  Prefixes go at the beginning of the word, e.g., impatient, dehydrated.
  Suffixes go at the end, e.g., careless, painful.

❖ Form
- ➢ Prefixes are added to the beginning of words. تضاف البادئات الى بداية الكلمات
  - Patient = impatient
- ➢ Suffixes are added to the end of words. يتم إضافة اللواحق في نهاية الكلمات
  - Pain = painful

❖ Use

Affixes are added to words to make new words. If you know what the affix means, you can guess the meaning of the new word.

يتم إضافة الإضافات(اللواصق) إلى الكلمات لتكوين كلمات جديدة. إذا كنت تعرف ما تعنيه الاضافة، فيمكنك تخمين معنى الكلمة الجديدة.

Here are some common prefixes: بادئات

	meaning	example
im~	not غير	imperfect غير تام
de~	the opposite of عكس	deform يشوه
re~	again مجدداً	refill ملأ ثانية

Here are some common suffixes: لواحق

	meaning	example
~less	Without بدون	worthless عديم القيمة
~full	full of مليء	joyful بهيج

- I am impatient to go on holiday.
- This toy is worthless. It broke as soon as Fuad started playing with it.

❖ الشكل في الامتحان

1. What is the opposite of "perfect" imperfect.
2. What is the opposite of "form" deform.
3. Add a suffix to "pain" painful.
4. Add a prefix to "hydrated" dehydrated.
5. Add a suffix to pain; painful/ painless.
6. Add a prefix to perfect; imperfect

A page 100 Write the topics of the paragraphs in the text on Student's Book page 68.

1 if you want to be fit and healthy
2 Before you begin taking exercise
3 Sports injuries
4 Ways of avoiding injuries

B page 100 Read the talk more carefully and answer these questions.

1 Use your own words below to show Ibrahim's advice to people before they begin exercising.

Advice	Reason
Find something you will enjoy	You won't stop doing it after a short time.
Exercise with a friend.	You will keep doing the exercise.
Choose different types of exercise.	You won't get bored.

2 How important do you think the things above are? Number them 1, 2 and 3.
They are very important to be fit and healthy.
1. Find something you will enjoy
2. Exercise with a friend.
3. Choose different types of exercise

3 According to Ibrahim, why do many people get injured when exercising?
They get injured because they are careless.

4 List Ibrahim's advice on how to avoid injuries.
- Warm up before you begin, e.g., by running on the spot or stretching.
- Wear the right clothes and safety equipment.
- Don't try to do too much too quickly. English saying: Don't try to run before you can walk.
- Have water with you because you will get thirsty.
- Stop if you begin to feel pain. ('no pain, no gain' is a common English expression.)

C page 101 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

تمرين مهم جداً

Colourful ملون impossible مستحيل fearless شجاع useful مفيد friendless لا أصدقاء له depopulated مهجور impolite غير مهذب

1 Mahmoud is fearless He is not afraid of anything.
2 Parrots have very colourful feathers.
3 This puzzle is impossible to finish.
4 He is alone and friendless
5 My bilingual dictionary is very useful.
6 Ten years ago, many people lived there, but it has become depopulated.
7 A man stepped on my foot and didn't say sorry. He was very impolite.

❖ التالي كشرح خارجي للتوضيح

❖ **Re** is a prefix with the meaning again, back or it indicates repetition.

هي بادئة مع معنى مرة أخرى، عودة أو تشير إلى التكرار.

replay return review reappear reuse recycle

❖ **Un** is a prefix meaning not. It's used to give opposite and negative meanings to adjectives, adverbs and nouns.

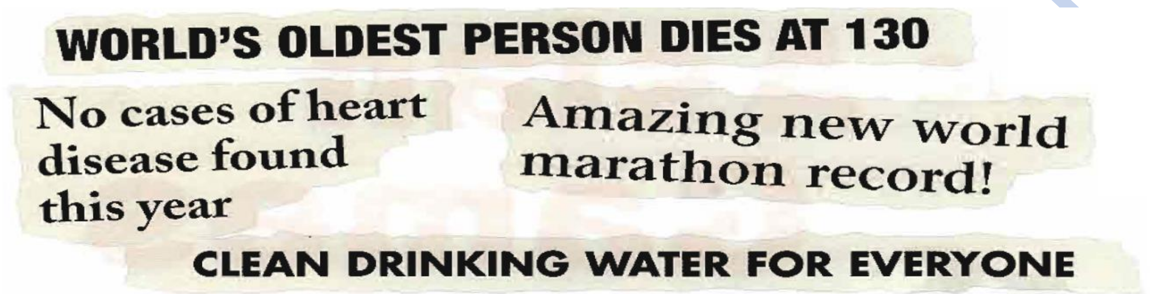
هي بادئة تعني لا. يتم استخدامه لإعطاء معاني معاكسة وسلبية للصفات والظروف والأسماء.

Happy = unhappy safe unsafe unusual unfair unhealthy unpleasant unfortunate unpopular

What do you think will happen? – page 69 – ماذا تعتقد سوف يحدث؟

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
marathon	سباق العدو	environment	بيئة	case	حالة
Heart disease	مرض القلب	improve	يحسن	trend	اتجاه / مجرى / يتجه
protect	يحمي	die	يموت	person	شخص
everyone	كل شخص	Opinions	أراء	continue	يستمر
train (v)	يتدرب	athletes	الرياضيين	speed	سرعة
Record (n)	رقم قياسي	disappear	يختفي	give up	يقلع / يستسلم

- Look at the newspaper headlines. Which of these things do you think will be possible in the future?


WORLD'S OLDEST PERSON DIES AT 130

No cases of heart disease found this year

Amazing new world marathon record!

CLEAN DRINKING WATER FOR EVERYONE

- Read some other people's opinions. Are any the same as yours?



I think people might live longer than that in the future because medicine has improved and continues to improve.



Athletes are getting stronger because they know how to train better and because they eat healthier food. I think athletes might continue to break speed records forever.



Heart disease might not kill as many people in the future because people are taking more exercise and giving up smoking. In fact, many diseases may disappear completely if this trend continues.



Clean drinking water for everyone! That would be fantastic. But no, I don't think it will ever happen. it might, but it might not because we are not doing enough to protect our environment now.

Talking about possible events: may/might + infinitive
Grammar and functions References p.100

- People **might** live longer than that.
- Many diseases **may** disappear completely.

❖ Talking about possible events: may/might + infinitive.

	+	-	
I / You He / She/ It We / You / They	Might May	Might not May not	go

	form (الشكل(الصيغة	example مثال
مثبت affirmative	فاعل + may / might + فعل مصدر(مجرد) .	I might go.
نفي negative	فاعل + May not / Might not + فعل مصدر(مجرد) .	I may not go.
question سؤال	Might + فاعل + فعل مصدر(مجرد) ?	Might he go? Might she go?

Use

➢ Use may/might+ infinitive to talk about possible events in the future.

نستخدم may/might+ infinitive للحديث عن الأحداث المحتملة في المستقبل.

- The ocean may be less polluted in ten years.
- We might find a cure for heart disease one day.
- Might he come for dinner tomorrow?
- I think athletes might continue to break speed records forever.
- Heart disease might not kill as many people in the future

➢ You can also use Do you think ... will to ask about possible events.

تستطيع ايضا استخدام Do you think ... will للسؤال عن الأحداث المحتملة.

- Do you think people will recycle their rubbish in the future?

❖ الشكل في الامتحان

1. The ocean be less polluted in ten years. (insert ادخل: may)
   The ocean may be less polluted in ten years
2. We might (find/found) a cure for heart disease one day. (choose)

A page 101 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

مهم نصا في التحريري

1 The Olympic Games might — c) take place in our country in four years.
2 If we don't build a new stadium, we might — d) not be able to hold the World Cup.
3 More people will use e-mail, so we might — b) not need telephones in the future.
4 Because of our healthier lifestyles, we might — a) not need doctors in the future.

B page 101 Write sentences with might/ might not and reasons.

1 It's possible that people will live longer, healthier lives.
People might live longer, healthier lives because medicine is improving fast.
2 It's possible that smoking will stop completely very soon.
Smoking might stop completely very soon because people don't want to die of heart disease.
3 It's possible that people won't be overweight in 20 years' time.
People might not be overweight in 20 years' time because they are taking more exercise.

C page 102 Write a paragraph (70-90 words) about possible events in your town or in your (or your family's) life in the future.

❖ انشاء الوحدة السادسة مهم جداً

Write a paragraph (70-90 words) about possible events in your town or in your (or your family's) life in the future.

اكتب فقرة (70-90 كلمة) حول الأحداث المحتملة في بلدتك أو في حياتك (أو عائلتك) في المستقبل.

There are a few things I hope to have in the future. I'm a diligent student so I might get great grades in Sixth Preparatory. My dream is to go to the faculty of medicine. My older brother is a doctor and he may help me at university. In addition, my dad promised me something I love so much if I got through good marks. I think he might buy me a car because I love cars.

هناك بعض الأشياء التي أتمنى أن أحصل عليها في المستقبل. أنا طالب مجتهد لذا قد أحصل على درجات رائعة في السادس الإعدادي. حلمي أن أذهب الى كلية الطب. أخي الأكبر طبيب وقد يساعدني في الجامعة. بالإضافة ان والدي وعني بشيء أحبه كثيرًا إذا حصلت على علامات جيدة. أعتقد أنه قد يشتري لي سيارة لأنني أحب السيارات.

Activity book – page 102 – كتاب النشاط

A page 102 **Match the words to the pictures.**

Snorkeling الغطس hiking التنزه scuba diving الغوص



hiking



scuba diving



Snorkeling

B page 73 صوت **Listen to two girls talking about their summer holiday. Where is Farah going? Where is Asma going?**

Farah is going to the seaside.
Asma is going to England.

C page 102 74 صوت **Listen again. Make notes about what the girls might do.**

Farah: learn to sail go snorkelling go scuba diving

Asma: go hiking get a bicycle

D page 103 **Use your answers to write sentences about the girls.**

Example: Farah might learn to sail this summer.

- Farah might learn to sail this summer.
- Farah might go snorkelling.
- Farah might go scuba diving.
- Asma might go hiking.
- Asma might get a bicycle.

E page 103 **Ask a partner about his/her plans. Your partner replies using might/ might not. Take turns.**

Ask about: tonight, tomorrow afternoon, the weekend, next week, the holidays.

What do you think you'll do tonight?

I might not do anything.

- **What do you think you will do tonight?**
  I might not do anything.
- **What do you think you will do tomorrow morning?**
  I might go to the mall.
- **What do you think you will do next week?**
  I may play football with my friends.
- **What do you think you will do at the weekend?**
  I may watch movies.

❖ الواجب البيتي

Ask a friend or family member some of the questions in Exercise E and write their answers. Use might.

أسال صديق أو أحد أفراد الأسرة بعض الأسئلة في التمرين E واكتب إجاباتهم. استخدم might ربما.

The Asian Games – page 70 – الألعاب الأسوية (مطلوب تحريري)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Become involved	يشارك	variety	تشكيلة	organizer	منظم
participate	يشارك	addition	إضافة / ملحق /زيادة	exciting	مثير
spectator	مشاهد / متفرج	triathlon	المُباراة الثلاثيّة؛ ترِاياثلون	Torch relay	تتابع/ تناوب الشعلة
wide	واسع	prepare	إعداد	mascot	جالب حظ / رمز
represent	يمثل / يعرض	statue	تمثال	countdown	العد التنازلي
Take/took place	يقام / أقيمت	happen	يحدث	country	بلد

The Asian Games







History of the Games

The Asian Games took place for the first time in India in 1951. Only 11 countries sent athletes to the Games and there were only six sports. Over the years, more countries have become involved in the Games and more activities have been added. Now the Asian Games is the second largest event in the world, after the Olympics.

The biggest Asian Games

The 15th Asian Games took place in Doha, Qatar, from 1 to 15 December, 2006. It was much bigger than the first Games in 1951. Athletes from 45 countries participated and there were 39 sports. People in 47 countries were able to see the events on television. The 16th Asian Games took place in Guangzhou, China, from 12 to 27 November, 2010. It was the biggest Games so far, with 9,704 athletes competing in 476 events.

New sports

Spectators were able to see a wide variety of events in 2010. There were sports like basketball, cycling and football that have been part of the Asian Games since they started. There were also some new events. The traditional game of cricket was added, and the ancient sport of dragon boat racing, as well as the very modern activities of dancesport and rollersports.

Preparing for the Games

To prepare for the Games, the organizers built 11 new sports venues and improved the facilities at 42 others. Athletes were able to stay in the new Asian Games Town. The local airport was improved and a new high-speed railway built to take the spectators and athletes quickly to the events. But the organizers needed more than buildings, planes and trains. They also looked for 60,000 people to help during the Games. These volunteers did various things, such as taking spectators to their seats, checking their tickets and giving information and directions.





Celebrations

A lot of events took place before and after the Games. One of the most exciting was the Torch Relay. It was a celebration of friendship and unity. The torch was lit at the Great Wall of China on 9 October and carried round 23 cities by a total of 2,068 runners. The amazing opening and closing ceremonies were held along the Pearl River, with fireworks and around 6,000 performers acting, singing and dancing.





Say hello to the sporty goats!

The mascot for the 16th Asian Games was the 'five sporty goats'. In Chinese tradition, the goat is a symbol of great luck and happiness. The mascot's job was to help people learn about the Games and remember that the Games are all about sport, fun and friendship.



A page 104 **What do these numbers refer to? Scan the article on Student's Book pages 70 and 71 and write the answers on the lines.**

الأسئلة التالية نصا في التحريري ضمن القطع (قد يحولهم الأستاذ الى أسئلة أو فراغات) كل أستاذ واسلوبه

1951 Year of the first Asian Games عام دورة الألعاب الآسيوية

11 Number of countries in the first Asian Games عدد الدول في الألعاب الآسيوية الأولى

6 Number of sports in the first Asian Games عدد الرياضات في أول دورة ألعاب آسيوية

45 Number of countries in the 15th Asian Games عدد الدول في دورة الألعاب الآسيوية الخامسة عشرة

39 Number of sports in the 15th Asian Games عدد الرياضات في دورة الألعاب الآسيوية الخامسة عشرة

47 Number of countries that showed the games on television عدد الدول التي عرضت المباريات على شاشة التلفزيون

2006 Year of the 15th Asian Games عام الدورة الخامسة عشرة للألعاب الآسيوية

9,704 Number of athletes competing in the 2010 Games عدد الرياضيين المتنافسين في دورة ألعاب 2010

476 Number of events in these Games عدد الأحداث في هذه الألعاب

❖ قد يحولهم الأستاذ الى أسئلة أو حتى فراغات في الامتحان كالتالي.

❖ كأسئلة

1. When did the first Asian Games take place? (Answer) متى أقيمت أول دورة ألعاب آسيوية؟
1951

2. How many countries participated in the first Asian Games? (Answer) كم عدد الدول التي شاركت في دورة الألعاب الآسيوية الأولى؟
11

3. How many sports were there in the first Asian Games? (Answer) كم عدد الرياضات التي كانت موجودة في الألعاب الآسيوية الأولى؟
6

4. How many countries participated in the 15th Asian Games? (Answer) كم عدد الدول التي شاركت في دورة الألعاب الآسيوية الخامسة
45

5. How many sports were there in the 15th Asian Games? (Answer) كم عدد الرياضات التي كانت موجودة في دورة الألعاب الآسيوية الخامسة عشرة؟
35

6. How many countries showed the games on television? (Answer) كم عدد الدول التي عرضت الألعاب على التلفزيون؟
47

7. When did the 15th Asian Games take place? (Answer) متى أقيمت الدورة الخامسة عشرة للألعاب الآسيوية؟
2006

8. How many athletes were competing in the 2010 Games? (Answer) كم عدد الرياضيين الذين كانوا يتنافسون في أولمبياد 2010؟
9,704

9. How many events were there in the 15th Asian Games? (Answer) كم عدد الأحداث التي كانت موجودة في دورة الألعاب الآسيوية الخامسة عشرة؟
476

❖ كفراغات

- Year of the first Asian Games 1951 …….. (complete)
- Number of countries in the first Asian Games 11 …….. (complete)
- Number of sports in the first Asian Games 6 …….. (complete)
- Number of countries in the 15th Asian Games 45 …….. (complete)
- Number of sports in the 15th Asian Games 39 …….. (complete)
- Number of countries that showed the games on television 47 …….. (complete)
- Year of the 15th Asian Games 2006 …….. (complete)
- Number of athletes competing in the 2010 Games 9,704 …….. (complete)
- Number of events in these Games 476 …….. (complete)

B **page 104** **Write the following words in your vocabulary notebook. Think about how you could use them to talk about the Asian games.**

Participate يشارك	spectator متفرج	wide واسع	variety تنوع	prepare يجهز	organizer منظم	statue تمثال

- **45 countries participated**
- **Variety of events or sports**
- **Organizer of games**

C **page 104** **Work with a partner or a group. How many of these questions can you answer without looking back at the article.**

الأسئلة مطلوب تحريري ضمن قطع الكتاب مهم جدا

1 **Where were the first Asian Games?** أين كانت أول دورة ألعاب آسيوية؟
in India في الهند

2 **Where did the biggest Asian Games take place?** أين أقيمت أكبر دورة ألعاب آسيوية؟
in Guangzhou, China, في كوانجو ، الصين ،

3 **What four sports were played at the Asian Games for the first time in 2010?**
ما هي الرياضات الأربع التي تم لعبها في دورة الألعاب الآسيوية لأول مرة في عام 2010؟

cricket, dragon boat racing, dancesport, and rollersports. الكريكت، سباق قوارب التنين، رياضة الرقص، ورياضات الرول.

4 **Where did the athletes stay?** أين بقي(باث) الرياضيون؟
in the new Asian Games Town. في مدينة الألعاب الآسيوية الجديدة.

5 **What did volunteers do during the 2010 Games?** ماذا فعل المتطوعون خلال دورة الألعاب 2010؟
They took spectators to their seats, checked their tickets and gave information and directions.
أخذوا المتفرجين إلى مقاعدهم، وفحصوا تذاكرهم وقدموا معلومات وإرشادات.

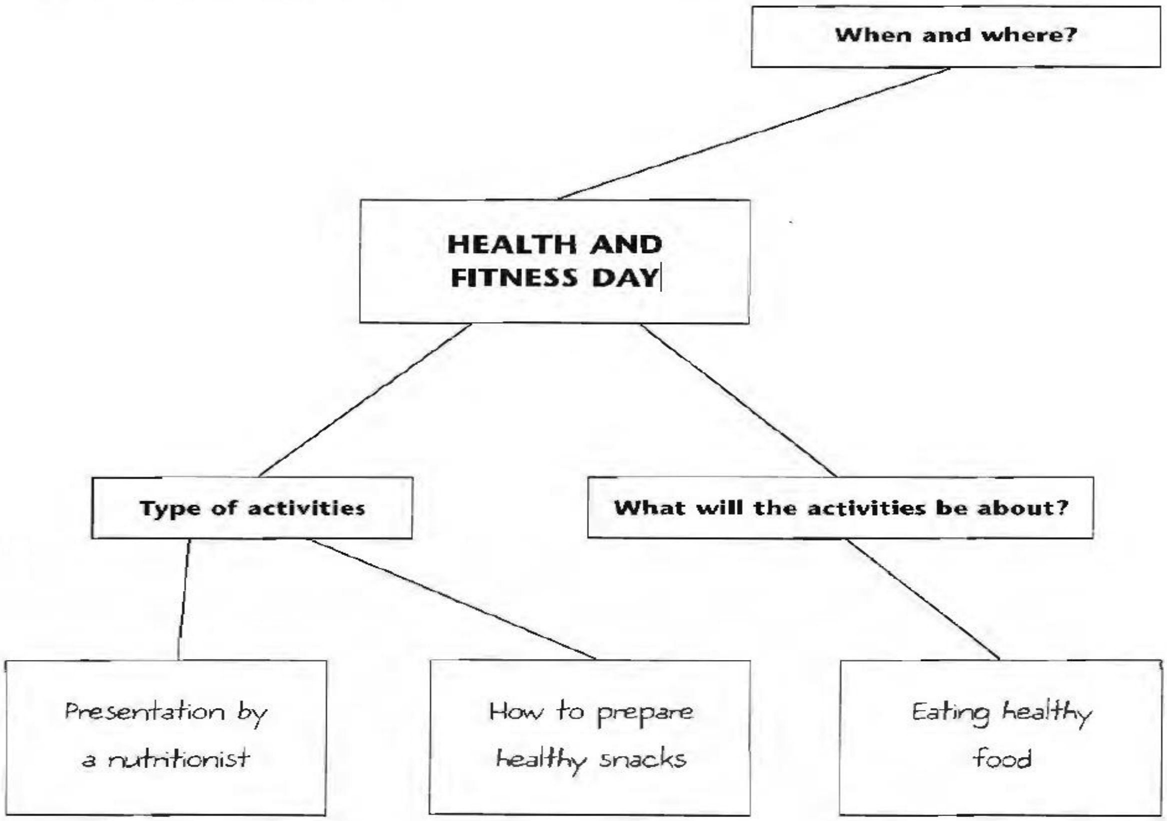
6 **What happened during the torch relay?** ماذا حدث خلال تناوب الشعلة؟
fireworks and around 6,000 performers acting, singing and dancing.
العاب النارية وحوالي 6000 فنان من التمثيل والغناء والرقص.

7 **What was the mascot for the 1 6th Asian Games?** ما هو الرمز لدورة الألعاب الآسيوية السادسة الأولى؟
‘Five sporty goats’. "خمسة ماعز رياضية".

Round up – page 72 – مراجعة

Activity book – page 105

A page 105 **Write an article about an event that is going to take place at your school. The event is called Health and Fitness Day.**



Health and Fitness Day at our school is next week. This event is held in my school every year. It shows students the importance of maintaining a healthy lifestyle. There will be a nutritionist who will present some types of foods which we should be careful of and other useful foods as well.

Then a cook will teach us how to prepare snacks. Finally, a fitness trainer will present some useful exercises that we should do in a gym.

يوم الصحة واللياقة في مدرستنا هو الأسبوع المقبل. يقام هذا الحدث في مدرستي كل عام. يوضح للطلاب أهمية الحفاظ على نمط حياة صحي. سيكون هناك اختصاصي تغذية سيقدم بعض أنواع الأطعمة التي يجب أن نتوخى الحذر منها والأطعمة المفيدة الأخرى أيضًا.

ومن ثم طباخ سيعلمنا كيفية تحضير الوجبات الخفيفة. أخيرًا، مدرب لياقة البدنية سيقدم بعض التمارين المفيدة التي يجب أن نقوم بها في صالة الألعاب الرياضية.

B page 105 Choose some of the ideas that you have written down. Organize them into paragraphs and paragraph content.

C page 106 Use your notes to write your article. Write a short conclusion saying why this is an important day.

Remember!

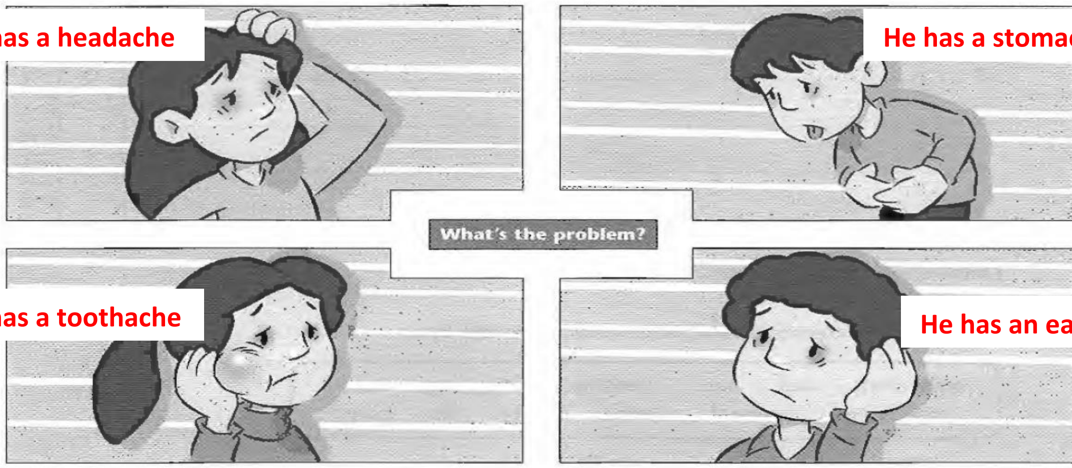
- Try to make your article interesting.
- Proofread your article.
  - Check for mistakes in spelling and punctuation.
  - Check for places where you can use better words.
  - Check that your ideas fit together.
- Exchange articles with a partner. Ask and answer questions if anything is not clear.

Health and Fitness Day at our school is next week. This event is held in my school every year. It shows students the importance of maintaining a healthy lifestyle. There will be a nutritionist who will present some types of foods which we should be careful of and other useful foods as well.

Then a cook will teach us how to prepare snacks. Finally, a fitness trainer will present some useful exercises that we should do in a gym.

Revision

A page 107 **Look at the pictures. What word links these people?**



What's the problem?
what links the four people is ache
because the four people in the pictures have
a headache, a stomach ache, toothache and earache.

B page 107 **Do a vocabulary quiz with a partner.**

تمرين مهم تحريري اما اسقاطات أو حتى ضمن الاملاء

Read a set of clues to your partner. For the right word, give your partner one point.
If your partner can spell the word correctly, give him/her another point.

SET 1	SET 2
1 These products are made from milk. dairy products	1 You need this if you have a small cut. a plaster
2 Fruit and vegetables have lots of these. vitamins	2 The problem you have if you_ need this syrup. a cough
3 Something your teeth need to be healthy. calcium	3 The problem you have if you need these lozenges. a sore throat
4 This makes your muscles strong. protein	4 You need this if you_- break a bone. a plaster cast
5 Fruit and vegetables have very few of these. calories	5 The middle part of the body. the waist

Try making your own clues for other words in Units 5 and 6. (homework)

C page 108 **Write down your partner's answers in full. Mark them true or false.**
__________________said that:

		True	False
1	Farah said that dairy products were made from milk.	✓	
2	Ahmed said that fruit and vegetables had a lot of protein.		X
3	Mustafa said calcium was Something my teeth needed to be healthy.	✓	
4	Ameer said protein made my muscles strong.	✓	
5	Ahmed said that the waist was the middle part of the body.	✓	

D page 108 **Complete the conversations with words from the box.**

equipment	diet	fever	bandage	coughing	taste
procedures	sprained	stretch	calories	flu	hurts

مهم ضمن الاسقاطات

Conversation 1
Saeed: What should I eat to have a good 1) diet?
Doctor: You should eat lots of vegetables and fruit.
Saeed: Hamburgers 2) taste good. Can I eat them?
Doctor: Yes, but not too many. They aren't very healthy, and have a lot of 3) calories
Saeed: That's OK. I thought you would say I couldn't eat any!

Conversation 2
Instructor: Remember to 4) stretch before exercising.
Sami: OK.
Instructor: And always follow safety 5) procedures Don't run near the swimming pool.
Sami: Can you show me how to use the 6) equipment in the gym?
Instructor: Yes, of course. We'll do that next.

Conversation 3
Chemist: Can I help you?
Nisrin: Yes. I fell in the street and my arm 7) hurts.
Chemist: Have you seen a doctor?
Nisrin: No. I don't think it's broken. I think I've 8) sprained it.
Chemist: I'll give you a 9)_ bandage, but you should see a doctor if it isn't better soon.

Conversation 4
Mother: I think you have a 10) fever. I'll get the thermometer.
Salwa: I don't think so. I feel much better.
Mother: You've been 11) coughing all night!
Salwa: The school show is today.
Mother: You can't go if you have 12) flu

Test

A page 109 **Complete the reported sentences.**

تمرين مهم جداً ضمن القواعد

1 Do you want to play volleyball?
He asked me if I wanted to play volleyball.
2 We're too tired to play tennis.
The girls told me they were too tired to play tennis.
3 I can't go to the sports centre.
Sultan said / told me he couldn't go to the sports centre.
4 Where's your life-jacket, Mary?
The instructor asked Mary where her lifejacket was.
5 You have to finish your homework before you go out.
My parents said / told me I had to finish my homework.

B page 110 **Write sentences about what is possible/ not possible in the future. Add reasons.**

تمرين مهم جدا ضمن القواعد

1 People / live longer / healthier diets.
People might live longer because they will have / have healthier diets.

2 planet/ be / less polluted.
The planet might be less polluted because cars are getting cleaner.

3 The re/ be / cure most diseases.
There might be a cure for most diseases because medicine is improving.

4 We / not have to / use / telephone.
We might not have to use the telephone because everyone will use email.

5 There / be / new sports records.
There might be new sports records because athletes are getting stronger.

C page 111 **Read this talk by a fitness Instructor and answer the questions. Then underline the words that mean the same thing as the words in bold in the text.**

Why exercise?

Exercise is important for your body in many ways. First of all, **exercise builds muscles**. You need strong muscles to do all the things you want to do during the day, even if your favourite hobby is playing computer games. If your muscles aren't strong, you can get tired easily.

Did you know your heart is a muscle? That's why exercise is good for your heart too. A strong heart can help prevent **heart disease**. This illness kills many people in developed countries because they don't have healthy habits. The best activities for your heart are activities like running that make you breathe hard.

Exercise is good for you because it helps you use the calories you get from food. If you don't exercise enough, the calories you don't use can make you **fat**. And people who are overweight are generally not as healthy as those who are not.

The best reason to get exercise is that it's fun. If you enjoy being with other people, try playing **basketball or volleyball**. Team sports are a good way to make friends and have fun while you get fit. But you don't have to do a sport to get exercise. Try walking or taking the stairs. These activities don't take much time, but if you do them regularly, they can help you get fit.

1 **Why do you need strong muscles?**
You need strong muscles so that you don't get tired when you do activities during the day.

2 **What kills many people in developed countries?**
Heart disease kills many people in developed countries.

3 **How does exercise keep you slim?**
Exercise uses up the calories you get from food, so it keeps you slim.

4 **What sports are a good way to make friends?**
Team sports like volleyball and basketball are a good way of making friends.

5 **How can you get exercise without doing a sport?**
You can get exercise by walking or using the stairs.

builds muscles - strong muscles
heart disease - This illness
fat - people who are overweight
basketball or volleyball - Team sports

D page 112 **Write a paragraph about your favourite sport.**

These questions might help you to plan.

What is it

Why do you like it

Is it a sport you do or a sport you watch?

Proofread your paragraph when you have finished. Think about how punctuation can help the reader understand it.

❖ **Write a paragraph about your favourite sport.**
❖ **اكتب فقرة عن رياضتك المفضلة.**

My favourite sport is football, I have been playing football since I was a little boy. So, I grew up only playing football and it became my favourite one. I often go to the football field with my friends to play. I also watch football on TV. My favourite team is the Iraqi national team. I love Muhannad (MIMI) so much and I always watch his moves and matches. He is a great player.

رياضتي المفضلة هي كرة القدم، لقد كنت ألعب كرة القدم منذ أن كنت طفلاً صغيراً. لذلك نشأت وأنا ألعب كرة القدم فقط وأصبحت المفضلة لدي. غالبًا ما أذهب إلى ملعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائي للعب. كما أنني أشاهد كرة القدم على التلفاز. فريقي المفضل هو المنتخب العراقي. أحب مهند (ميمي) كثيراً ودائماً ما أشاهد حركاته ومبارياته. إنه لاعب رائع.

Meet the scientists – page 76 – قابل العلماء

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Marine biologist	عالم الأحياء البحرية	Source/sɔːs/	مصدر	Test tube	أنبوب اختبار
forester	حارس غابة / حراج	disease /dɪˈziːz/	مرض	sample	عينة
aerospace engineer	مهندس طيران	Product/ ˈprɒdʌkt/	منتج	protect	يحمي
meteorologist	عالم الأرصاد الجوية	laboratory /ləˈbɒrəˌt(ə)rɪ/	مختبر	satellite	الأقمار الصناعية
geologist	عالم جيولوجي(أرض)	pollute /pəˈluːt/	يلوث	technology	تكنولوجيا
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي/ الجو	Ocean/ˈəʊʃ(ə)n/	محيط	oxygen	الأكسجين
Weather forecast	النشرة الجوية	Tool / tuːl/	أداة	predict	تنبؤ
Radar map / ˈreɪdɑː/	خريطة الرادار	cure /kjʊə/	علاج	plant	نبات

- **Match the texts and the pictures. Work out what the names of these jobs mean. Then do Exercise A in the Activity Book.**



A | **4**

I study plants and animals that live in the sea. Sometimes I work in a laboratory, but today I'm working on the beach. I have a test tube to collect water samples in. I use these samples to see if the water is too polluted for fish and plant life. It is important to protect our oceans because fish is an important source of food in many countries. It is also important for people who don't eat fish. Some fish and marine plants may help us find cures for diseases like cancer one day.

B | **1**

If you watch the weather forecast on TV, you probably know -why my job is important. I can help you decide what to wear, or tell you if it is a good time to go to the beach. Sometimes the Information I give people about the weather can save lives. Pilots need to know what the weather will be in order to fly their planes safely. Some parts of the world have severe storms. The people need to know when they are coming so that they can be prepared. I use different tools to help me predict the weather. This Is a radar map. It shows where it is raining.

C | **2**

I study the Earth. How does that help you every day? I work for a petroleum company. I help the company find petroleum in the Earth. We use petroleum to make different products such as petrol to drive your car, glasses to help you see better and even ink for the pens you write with. In fact, it is almost impossible to live today without using some products made from petroleum.

D | **3**

My job is to help satellites get information from space and send it back to earth. You may not know it. But things you see every day use satellite technology. Satellite can help you get television programmes from far away on your TV screen. They can also take pictures of the earth and give us information about the weather or about pollution in the atmosphere.

E | **5**

Forests are an important part of our world because they are home to thousands of plants and animals. Many of these plants release oxygen that we need in order to breathe. Some plants are important because we use them to make medicines. My job is to study forests in different parts of the world and see what we need to do to protect them for future generations.

- **How do these scientists help us? Discuss this question in groups. Then read what the scientists say and find out.**

A page 113 Join the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

تمرين مهم جداً

1 A marine biologist studies — a) the Earth.
2 A forester studies — b) the weather.
3 An aerospace engineer works — c) plants and animals in the sea.
4 A meteorologist studies — d) with things in space.
5 A geologist studies — e) trees.

- le; 2e; 3d; 46; 5a

B page 113 Write how you think each of the scientists help us most in our everyday life.

تمرين مهم قد يستخدم كإسقاطات

1 A marine biologist
He helps to know whether the water is polluted for fish and plant life or not. He protects our oceans. He also help us find cures for diseases like cancer one day.

2 A forester
He protects the forest because some plants are important to make medicines. Also protect forests for future generations.

3 An aerospace engineer
He helps us with technology like television programmes. Also know information about the weather or about pollution in the atmosphere.

4 A meteorologist
He helps us know Information about the weather. Their job can save lives. He also helps Pilots know what the weather will be in order to fly their planes safely.

5 A geologist
He helps the companies find petroleum in the Earth. We use petroleum to make different products such as petrol to drive our cars, glasses to help us see better and even ink for the pens we write with.

C page 114 Work with a partner. Find these words in the text on Student's Book page 76. How many do you know already? Discuss the meanings and check them in a dictionary. Write them in your vocabulary notebook.

Laboratory	test tube	pollute	severe	atmosphere
radar	map	satellite	oxygen	release

Laboratory معمل
test tube أنبوب اختبار
pollute يلوث
severe شديد / حاد
atmosphere غلاف الجوي / جو / هواء
radar رادار
map خريطة
satellite قمر صناعي
oxygen الأكسجين
release اطلاق/تحرير/ افراج

Winds – page 77 - رياح

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
hurricane /ˈhʌrɪk(ə)n/	اعصار	contract (v)	يعقد	equator /ɪˈkweɪtə/	خط الاستواء
generate /ˈdʒenəreɪt/	ينتج / يولد	create	يخلق/ينتج	pressure /ˈpreʃə/	الضغط
damage (v)(n) /ˈdæmɪdʒ/	ضرر/ يضر	Certain areas	مناطق معينة	subtropics /sʌbˈtrɒpɪks/	مناطق شبه الاستوائية
expand /ɪkˈspænd	يوسع	satellite	أقمار صناعية	Sailor/ ˈseɪlə/	بحار
decrease /dɪˈkriːs/	ينقص	trade (v)	يقايض/يتاجر	Sink (v) /sɪŋk/	المصارف
sandstorm /ˈsæn(d)stɔːm/	عاصفة رملية	Air / eə /	هواء	global /ˈgləʊb(ə)l/	عالمي

- Match the paragraphs with the questions in Exercise A in the Activity Book.

SCIENCE TODAY







A We can't see it, but we can feel it. Sometimes the wind is gentle and makes us feel cool on a hot day. It can be used to generate electricity. Sometimes it is so strong it can damage trees and buildings. Where does it come from?

B Wind is connected to changes in the temperature of the air. If the air is warm, it expands and rises. This leaves an area of low pressure near the Earth. If the air is cold, it contracts and sinks towards the Earth. This creates an area of high pressure near the Earth. Wind happens when air moves from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure. If there is a big difference between the high- and the low-pressure areas, the winds are very strong.

C There are global winds - winds that blow all over the world. The sun heats some parts of the world more than others and creates areas of high and low pressure. Trade winds are an example of global winds. They blow from the subtropics to the equator. They are called trade winds because, in the past, sailors used them to move t heir sailboats when they wanted to trade.

D Some winds are local winds. They blow only in certain areas of the world. An example of a local wind is the Shamal, which blows in the Arabian Gulf. It blows in the summer only, especially in the afternoon, and decreases at night. This wind blows from the northeast and can cause sandstorms.

E In some parts of the world, dangerous storms called hurricanes happen at the end of the summer. If the air above the sea is very warm, the air pressure falls very rapidly over the warm sea and a hurricane forms. The winds increase in speed and they can cause terrible damage to people and buildings when they pass over land. Meteorologists use satellites to try to predict when a hurricane will form and where it will go so that they can warn people who live in the area.

Zero conditional Grammar and functions reference p.100

- Use it to talk about things that are always true, e,g., scientific facts.
  استخدمه للتحدث عن الأشياء الصحيحة دائمًا ، على سبيل المثال ، الحقائق العلمية.

  If clause main cfause
  If the air is warm, it expands and rises.

❖ Zero conditional(The factual conditional) الحالة الشرطية الصفر
الحالة الشرطية عن الحقائق ❖

❖ الهيكل العام للشرطيات

- **If clause (if جملة) + main clause الجملة الرئيسية**

❖ لماذا نسميهم بالشرطيات؟ (شيء ما عليك القيام به أو موقف يجب أن يكون موجودًا حتى يحدث شيء آخر)
❖ لماذا نستخدمهم أو متى نستخدمهم؟ (نستخدمهم لنتكلم عن مواقف تخيلية في الماضي والمضارع والمستقبل)
❖ كيف نستخدمهم؟ تابع معي جيداً

1. الحالة الشرطية الصفر (zero conditional) (الشرطية الحقيقية) What actually happens.

❖ قبل كل شي الحالة الشرطية الصفر ليست احتمالية وإنما حقيقة
❖ النتيجة نفسها بشكل دائمي. (يصف شيئاً عاماً)

- **الوقت**: عام
- **الوظيفة**: عادات / ميول / وحقائق علمية
- **الاستخدام**: استخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى عندما يكون الفعل(العمل) في الجملة الرئيسية دائما حقيقياً عندما يكون جملة if حقيقية

❖ Form

A zero conditional sentence has two clauses: a clause with if and a main clause. Use a comma to separate the clauses when you put the if clause first.

تحتوي الجملة الشرطية الصفر على جملتين: جملة تحتوي على if وجملة رئيسية. استخدم الفارزة لفصل الجمل عندما تضع جملة if أولاً.

If clause جملة	Main clause جملة رئيسية
If + present simple, I/we/you/they → مجرد If + فاعل + فعل مضارع He/she/it → فعل (s,es)	If + present simple, I/we/you/they → مجرد If + فاعل + فعل مضارع He/she/it → فعل (s,es)

❖ المضارع البسيط (simple present)

- نستخدمه للتكلم عن العادات(الروتين) والحقائق الخ. القاعدة كالتالي:

I, We, You, They → فعل مجرد
فاعل + فعل
He, she, it, → فعل(s/es)

فاعل مفرد شخص ثالث	فاعل شخص أول وثاني وشخص ثالث جمع
He gets angry	We get angry
Ali / Huda gets angry	Ahmed and I get angry
My father gets angry	You get angry
It freezes / it falls	They get

- **If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils.**
  - لاحظ الفارزة بعد جملة if (عندما نستخدم if في بداية الجملة)
- **Water freezes if the temperature falls to 0 degrees.**
  - هنا if في منتصف الجملة (لا نستخدم الفارزة قبل if)

❖ Use الاستخدام

- Use zero conditional sentences to talk about things that are always true, such as scientific facts.
  استخدم الجمل الشرطية الصفر للتحدث عن الأشياء الصحيحة دائمًا، مثل الحقائق العلمية.
- The zero conditional is not about a possibility, it's about fact / habits/truths
  الشرطية الصفر ليس بخصوص الاحتمالات، إنه يتعلق بالحقائق / العادات / الحقائق

  - If you touch a fire, you get burned.

- The result will always happen. So, if water reaches 100 degrees, it always boils. It's a fact.
  I'm talking in general, not about one particular situation. The result of the 'if clause' is always the main clause.
  النتيجة ستحدث دائما. لذلك، إذا وصل الماء إلى 100 درجة، فإنه يغلي دائمًا. انها حقيقة.
  أنا أتحدث بشكل عام، وليس عن موقف معين. دائمًا ما تكون نتيجة "جملة if" هي الجملة الرئيسية.
- The 'if' in this conditional can usually be replaced by 'when' without changing the meaning.
  يمكن عادةً استبدال "if" في هذا الشرط بـ "when" دون تغيير في المعنى.

2. If you touch a fire, you get burned.
3. My parents get worried if I come home late.

❖ يمكن أستخدام when بدل (if) في الحالة الشرطية الصفر ولا يتغير المعنى

1. She gets excited if her mother cooks her favourite meal.
2. She gets excited when her mother cooks her favourite meal.

A page 114 Read these questions. How quickly can you find the paragraph which contains each answer? The words in bold are clues.

1 Where do trade winds blow? C
2 What is the Shamal? D
3 What do meteorologists use to predict hurricanes? E
4 How does wind happen? B

B page 114 Read the article more carefully. Answer the questions in Exercise A.

1 Trade winds blow from the subtropics to the equator.
2 The Shamal is a wind that blows in the Arabian Gulf and can cause sandstorms.
3 They use satellites to predict hurricanes.
4 Wind happens when air moves from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure.

C page 115 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

تمرين مهم جدا قد يستخدم كما هو

1 If I eat too much chocolate,
2 If the weather is nice,
3 If I am late in the morning,
4 I always say hello
5 The teacher gets angry

a) if I forget my homework.
b) I get a stomach ache.
c) I play football with my friends.
d) if I see my neighbour.
e) my father drives me to school.

- 1b; 2c; 3e; 4d; 5a

D page 115 Complete these zero conditional sentences with your own ideas.

أكمل هذه الجمل الشرطية الصفرية بأفكارك الخاصة.
تمرين مهم جدا نصا وبنفس المطلب

1 If it rains, I stay at home. موقف خاص ولكن لا يزال صحيحة عني انا
2 If the Shamal blows, it causes sandstorms
3 If it is extremely hot, you get burned.
4 I like to watch movies if its Friday night. موقف خاص ولكن لا يزال صحيحة عني انا

❖ الشكل في الامتحان

- If it rains,………..(complete this zero conditional sentences with your own idea)
  أكمل هذه الجملة الشرطية الصفرية بفكرتك الخاصة.
  If it rains, I stay at home.
- If you heat water to 100 degrees, it (boil). (Correct the form of the verb صحح شكل الفعل)
  If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils.
- If you (heat) water to 100 degrees, it boils. (Correct the form of the verb صحح شكل الفعل)
  If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils.
- Water (freeze) if the temperature falls to 0 degrees. (Correct the form of the verb صحح شكل الفعل)
  Water freezes if the temperature falls to 0 degrees.

A weather forecast – page 78 – نشرة جوية

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
typical	نموذجي	stormy	عاصف	pressure	ضغط
entire	كله	eastwards	شرقا	degree	درجة / شهادة
Experience (v)	يعاني / يختبر	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	entire area	المنطقة بأكملها
humidity	رطوبة	hurricane	اعصار	Temperature	درجة حرارة
rain	مطر	Algeria	الجزائر	sky	سماء
Kingdom	مملكة	pleasantly	بسرور/ بلطف	cloudy	مغيم
Atlantic	الأطلسي	season	موسم / فصل	check	يتحقق

❖ First conditional with will/may/might
❖ الحالة الشرطية الأولى مع will / may / might

First conditional Grammar and functions reference p.100

- Use the first conditional for events that are possible in the future If a condition is met.

If clause	main clause
present simple	will/ may/ might + infinitive (فعل مصدر)
If you study hard,	you will pass the test.

1. الحالة الشرطية الاولى (first conditional) (المستقبل الشرطي الحقيقي) Future real conditional

توضيح بسيط

- يمكن تحقيقها ومحتملة جداً
- يصف شيئاً معينا (خاصا وليس بشكل عام كالحالة الصفر)
- حالة ممكنة = نتيجة محتملة جداً

❖ الوقت: مستقبل
❖ الوظيفة: مستقبل محتمل / توقعات / وعود / عروض.... الخ
❖ أستخدام: للتكلم عن نتيجة حدث(عمل) ممكنة في المستقبل (عندما تعتقد بأن جملة If محتملة)

❖ Form

➢ A first conditional sentence has two clauses: a clause with if and a main clause. Use a comma to separate the clauses when you put the if clause first.

تحتوي الجملة الشرطية الأولى على جملتين: جملة تحتوي على جملة if وجملة رئيسية. استخدم الفارزة لفصل الجمل عندما تضع جملة if أولاً.

If clause جملة	Main clause جملة رئيسية
If + present simple,	will/may/might+ infinitive
If + فاعل + فعل مضارع I/we/you/they → مجرد He/she/it → فعل (s,es)	فاعل + will / may / might + فعل مصدر مجرد
If you study hard, If she studies hard,	You will pass the test. She might pass the test.

- If it is sunny, we will go to the beach.
- I will watch the weather forecast if I have time,

❖ Use الاستخدام

- Use the first conditional for events that are possible in the future if the condition is met. Use will when you think the possibility is high, may/might when you think it is lower.
  استخدم الشرط الأول للأحداث المحتملة في المستقبل إذا تم استيفاء الشرط. استخدم will عندما تعتقد أن الاحتمال ممكن جداً ، وأستخدم might / may عندما تعتقد أنه أقل احتمالية.

- If it is cold, I will wear a jacket.
- If you watch this documentary, you may learn something new.
- You might catch the bus if you leave right away.

❖ First vs. Zero Conditional:

- The first conditional describes a particular situation, يصف الشرطية الأولى حالة معينة ،
- whereas the zero conditional describes what happens in general. بينما يصف الشرط الصفري ما يحدث بشكل عام

Zero conditional happens in general	First conditional describes a particular situation
If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils. إذا قمت بتسخين الماء إلى 100 درجة ، فإنه يغلي. في كل مرة يصل الماء الى مئة درجة فأنه يغلي إذا النتيجة ثابتة (نفسها دائما) بشكل عام. حقيقة ثابتة	If I study hard, I'll pass my test. إذا درست بجد، سأجتاز الاختبار. اتحدث هنا عما سيحدث في حال درست بجد مجرد احتمالية نجاح في حال درست بجد. قد أدرس بجد ولا انجح (يمكن تحقيق الدراسة ونجاحي محتمل جداً ولكن ليست حقيقة وانما مجرد احتمالية)

Activity book – page 115

A page 115 75 صوت Listen to a weather forecast. Which country will have dangerous weather?

The United States.

B page 115 76 صوت Listen again and complete the table. Then check your answers on Student's Book page 78.

	High temp.	Low temp.	Sun/clouds	Rain
Iraq	38°	31°	sunny	No
Saudi Arabia	36°	30°	sunny	No
Egypt	40°	30°	cloudy	No
Algeria	28°	22°	partly cloudy	No
The United Kingdom	23°	13°	cloudy	Yes
The United States	-	-	-	Yes

C page 116 **Complete the e-mail with verbs from the box.**

doesn't have لا يملكه	is	prefer يُفضل	needs يحتاج	might be ربما يكون

From: Samer
To: Khalid
Subject: Re: Tomorrow

Hi Khalid.

Thanks for your e-mail. I don't know what I'm doing tomorrow yet. If my father 1) needs me to help him fix the car, I'll have to be at home all afternoon. But I don't know if he's got the part he needs. If he 2) doesn't have it, I 3) ”ll be free to go to the cinema. But have you heard the weather forecast? J think it 4) might be a beautiful day. I 5) prefer the beach to the cinema if the Weather 6) is nice. Let's talk tomorrow and decide then.

❖ الواجب البيتي (مهم جدا انشاء الوحدة السابعة: الانشاء مطلوب تحريري)

Write to a friend. Tell him/her what you will do and what you might do tomorrow.

From: Ahmed
To: Ali
Subject: Tomorrow

Hi Ali:

Thanks for the email. Well, I guess my mom might need my help tomorrow.
If my mother needs me to mow the lawn, I'll be home all afternoon. But if I finish early, we'll go to the cinema. Although I would like to go to the beach because I heard the weather forecast saying that tomorrow the weather will be sunny and hot. Let's talk about this and decide.

من: احمد
إلى: علي
الموضوع: غدا

مرحبا علي:

شكرا على رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. حسنًا، أعتقد أن والدتي قد تحتاج مساعدتي غدًا.
إذا احتاجتني والدتي في جز العشب، فسأكون في المنزل طوال فترة الظهيرة. لكن إذا انتهيت مبكرًا، سنذهب إلى السينما. على الرغم من أنني أرغب بالذهاب إلى الشاطئ لأنني سمعت النشرة الجوية تقول إن الطقس غداً سيكون مشمسًا وحاراً. دعنا نتحدث عن هذا ونقرر.

Restoring the Garden of Eden – page 79 – ترميم(إعادة) جنة عدن (مطلوب تحريري)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
wetland	أرض رطبة	arched	مقوس	marshes /ˈmɑːʃɪz/	الاهوار
migrating /maɪˈɡreɪtɪŋ/	الهجرة	waterside	جانب الماء	project	مشروع
Descendants/dɪˈsendənts/	أحفاد	arched reed	تقوس القصب	restore	يعيد
water buffalo	جاموس الماء	environment	بيئة	range	نطاق / مدى
Civilization/ sɪvɪlaɪˈzeɪʃ(ə)n/	الحضارة	depending	حسب	shrunk	يتقلص
riverbanks	ضفاف النهر	overflow	يفيض	floods	فيضانات
Mesopotamia/ mesəpəˈteɪmiə/	بلاد ما بين النهرين	major	رئيسي	canoe /kəˈnuː/	قارب
lack health care	تفتقر إلى الرعاية الصحية	butter	زبدة	cheese	جبنه
Artificial/ˌɑːtɪˈfɪʃəl/	اصطناعي	waterside	جانب الماء	experts	خبراء
papyrus and mud / pəˈpaɪrəs/	البردى والطين	dried	جافة	affected	متأثر



Dear Mona,
I'm having a great holiday with my family in the marshes, doing a lot of canoeing and fishing.
We are staying with a family in Al-Hammaar marshland. They know a lot about the paces there. Yesterday, they talked about an amazing project called 'Restoring the Garden of Eden in the south of Iraq,' The marshes are known as the Garden of Eden and used to cover about 9000 km2 They were part of Mesopotamia, which has been inhabited by the Sumerians from the dawn of civilization.

Over the centuries, the marshes have grown or shrunk depending on how much rain there has been. During the seasonal floods, water overflows the riverbanks and stops the marshes drying out. This area is one of the largest and most important wetlands in the world. It supports a wide range of plants and animals, and is a major stopping point for migrating Birds. The marshes are also home to more than half a million people, a community thought to be the descendants of the Sumerians.

My holiday is a bit exhausting, because you to row a canoe (Mashhoof) to go from one house to another. The people are very generous and friendly, but they lack health care, education and drinking water. They live on fishing, shooting birds, raising buffaloes and growing rice. A few families breed cows and sheep. Buffaloes provide milk, butter, cheese and yoghurt. The people live in arched reed houses built on the waterside or on artificial islands of reeds, papyrus and mud.

I have learned a lot about wetlands, the environment and life in the marshes. I am sure that there are marsh plants that have not been studied yet, which may one day be made into medicines. I have also found out about how the marshes were dried out in the 1990s and how that badly affected the people and environment. A huge area was destroyed, but now experts are working hard to restore the damaged environment, and this encourages the animals and birds of the marshes to return. This will take a long time, but it's so important. Otherwise, we'll face real problems in the future.

Perhaps I'll write again before we come home. If not, I'll definitely call you as soon as possible.

Wishing you all the best,
Layla

Adverbs of certainty
Grammar and functions reference p.101

- **Definitely**, **probably** and **perhaps**. are adverbs that say how sure you are.
  بالتأكيد ومن المحتمل وربما. هي الظروف التي تشير إلى مدى تأكدك.
- Find examples in the letter. Which one sounds ... most sure? ... least sure?
  اعثر على أمثلة في الرسالة. أيهما يبدو ... أكثر تأكيداً؟ ... أقل تأكيداً؟

A page 117 **Answer the questions about the letter on Student's Book page 79.**

الأسئلة التالية مطلوب تحريري ضمن قطع الكتاب

1 **Where did Layla go on holiday?** أين ذهبت ليلى في الإجازة؟

Al Hammaar marshland, in the south of Iraq. هور الحَمار جنوب العراق.

2 **What did she do on holiday, and what did she learn about?** ماذا فعلت في العطلة وعن ماذا تعلمت؟

Canoeing, fishing; she learned about the wetland environment and the project 'Restoring the Garden of Eden in the south of Iraq'.

التجديف بالقوارب، وصيد الأسماك؛ وتعلمت عن بيئة الأراضي الرطبة ومشروع "استعادة جنة عدن في جنوب العراق".

3 **Who lives in the marshes? How long have they lived there?** من يعيش في الاهوار؟ منذ متى عاشوا هناك؟

Descendants of the Sumerians. أحفاد السومريين.

4 **What do the people eat? What are their houses like? How do they move around?**
ماذا يأكل الناس؟ كيف تبدو منازلهم؟ كيف يتنقلون؟

- **They eat fish, birds, rice and also butter, cheese and yoghurt made from the buffalo milk.**
  يأكلون السمك والطيور والأرز وكذلك الزبدة والجبن والزبادي(اللبن) المصنوع من حليب الجاموس.
- **Their houses are made from reeds and are arch-shaped.** منازلهم مبنية من القصب ولها شكل قوس.
- **They travel by canoe (Mashhoof).** يسافرون بالزورق (مشهوف).

Yoghurt = /ˈjɒg.ət/

5 **What do the people lack?** الى ماذا يفتقر الناس؟

Health care, education and drinking water. الرعاية الصحية والتعليم ومياه الشرب.

6 **Why are these marshes so important?** لماذا هذه الاهوار مهمة جدا؟

They are important for the environment and the lives of people, animals and birds.

إنها مهمة للبيئة وحياة الناس والحيوانات والطيور.

7 **What destroyed a large area of the marshes?** ما الذي دمر مساحة كبيرة من الاهوار؟

They were dried out in the 1990s. لقد تم تجفيفها في التسعينات.

8 **Why do you think it's important to restore the marshes? What will happen if we don't?**
لماذا تعتقد أنه من المهم استعادة الأهوار؟ ماذا سيحدث إذا لم نفعل ذلك؟

it's important because of the people living there this is their way of living their home if we don't restore it people there will have to leave their homes and lands. They might even become homeless or emigrate to other cities.

إنه أمر مهم بسبب الأشخاص الذين يعيشون هناك، فهذه هي طريقتهم في العيش في منزلهم إذا لم نقم باستعادته، فسيتعين على الناس هناك مغادرة منازلهم وأراضيهم. حتى أنهم قد يصبحون بلا مأوى أو يهاجرون إلى مدن أخرى.

❖ Adverbs of certainty
❖ ظروف اليقين

- ➢ **perhaps (least certain),** غير متأكد جدا
- ➢ **definitely (very certain),** متأكد جدا
- ➢ **probably (in the middle).** في الوسط

❖ **Perhaps**

Perhaps = formal رسمي (maybe = informal) ربما

❖ **(perhaps = not certain about something)**

❖ **Perhaps is an adverb. It can be used to modify an entire sentence. (it can be used as an ordinary verb too)**

ربما يكون ظرف. يمكن استخدامه لتعديل جملة كاملة. (يمكن استخدامه كفعل عادي أيضًا)

➢ **Use perhaps to say that you think something is possible but not certain. Put perhaps at the beginning of a sentence.**

استخدم ربما لتقول إنك تعتقد أن شيئًا ما ممكن ولكن غير مؤكد. ضع ربما في بداية الجملة.

Perhaps + الجملة

- **Perhaps, we will see each other during the holidays.**

❖ **Probably** من المحتمل

➢ **Use probably to say that you think something is likely. Put probably after the verb to be and auxiliary verbs, but before simple tenses of most verbs.**

استخدم على الأرجح لتقول إنك تعتقد أن شيئًا ما محتمل. ضع على الأرجح بعد الفعل to be والأفعال المساعدة، ولكن قبل الأزمنة البسيطة لمعظم الأفعال.

فاعل + مساعد + probably + ت.....

- **He is probably very tired from all that walking.**
- **We will probably visit the marshes when we are in the south of Iraq.**

فاعل + probably + فعل رئيسي......

- **Layla probably learned a lot on her trip.**

❖ **Definitely** بالتأكيد

➢ **Use definitely to say that you think something is sure. Put definitely after the verb to be(am/is/are) and auxiliary verbs, but before simple tenses of most verbs.**

استخدم بالتأكيد لتقول إنك تعتقد أن شيئًا ما مؤكد. ضع بالتأكيد بعد الفعل to be (am / is / are) والأفعال المساعدة ، ولكن قبل الأزمنة البسيطة لمعظم الأفعال.

فاعل + مساعد + Definitely + ت.......

- **I tried to call Muna twice. She is definitely not at home.**
- **I will definitely call you as soon as I get back.**

فاعل + Definitely + فعل رئيسي.....

- **He definitely wants to come with us.**

B page 118 Complete the sentences with probably, perhaps or definitely.

تمرين مهم جداً نصا

1 I love this place. I definitely/probably want to come back soon.
2 It's raining heavily. The tennis match will definitely/probably be cancelled.
3 Perhaps I'll be a geologist when I'm older.
4 You must read this book. It's definitely/probably the most interesting book I've ever read.
5 Adnan didn't come to school today. He's probably ill.
6 I'm not sure, but I will probably write about rainforests for my Geography project.
7 Perhaps you can get the information you need in the self-access centre.
8 I think it will be sunny tomorrow, so we can probably go to the beach.

C page 118 Choose the correct verb form to complete the sentences.

تمرين مهم جداً

1 If we destroy the rainforest, many animals and plants _______
a) will disappear b) disappear

2 If we don't study rainforest plants, we _______ cures for some diseases.
a) might not find b) don't find

3 If a lizard loses its tail, it always _______ back.
a) might grow back b) grows

4 We _______ to South America if we have a long holiday.
a) might go b) go

5 Some plants eat insects. If an insect _______ on their leaves, the plants catch them.
a) will land b) lands

6 If a rubber tree _______ too cold, it dies.
a) gets b) might get

❖ الواجب البيتي

Unscramble the sentences and write them with correct punctuation.

حل رموز الجمل واكتبها بعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة.

1 tonight i'm the to definitely going game
I'm definitely going to the game tonight.
2 can perhaps we lunch have tomorrow together
Perhaps we can have lunch together tomorrow.
3 probably library books the has the you want
The library probably has the books you want.
4 was the best definitely that film ever seen I've
That was definitely the best film I've ever seen.
5 the probably weather will be time year sunny at of this
The weather will probably be sunny at this time of year.

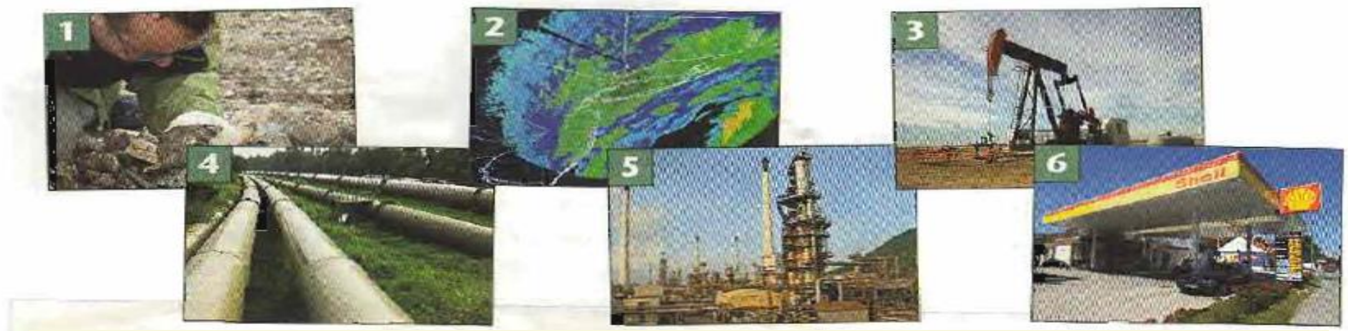
From the Earth to the refinery – page 80 – من الأرض الى المصفاة (مطلوب تحريري)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
Layer/ ˈleɪə/	طبقة	image /ˈɪmɪdʒ/	صورة	drill (v)	يحفر
mud /mʌd/	طين	drilling /ˈdrɪlɪŋ/	حفر / تنقيب	derrick /ˈderɪk/	مضخة نفط
remains	بقايا	gush /gʌʃ/	تدفق	liquid /ˈlɪkwɪd/	سائل
artificial	مصطنع	pipeline	خط انابيب	complex	معقد
pressure	ضغط	satellite /ˈsætəlæɪt/	الأقمار الصناعية	Radar map /ˈreɪdɑː/	خريطة الرادار

- **Match the pictures and the words. What are they for? Read the text and check your ideas. Then do Exercise A in the Activity Book.**

petrol station محطة وقود refinery مصفاة pipeline خط انابيب rock samples عينات الصخور derrick مضخة radar mapخريطة الرادار

1 rock samples **2** radar map **3** derrick **4** pipeline **5** refinery **6** petrol station



Petroleum was formed millions of years ago. Animals and plants died and were covered by layers of mud and water. These layers put pressure on the remains of the animals and plants. The heat and pressure slowly changed them to petroleum.

Petroleum is not found everywhere. To find it, geologists examine rock samples from the Earth, or they use satellite images and radar maps. When petroleum has been found in an area, drilling takes place to find out if there is enough oil to make it worthwhile extracting. If there is enough, a well is drilled through the rock. It can be as deep as five kilometres. A derrick has to be built to hold the tools that are used by the workers and to hold the pipes that have to go into the well. When the oil is reached, it gushes up through the pipes.

When petroleum comes out of the ground, it is a thick, black liquid. It needs to be processed before it can be used. This takes place at a refinery. The oil is sent to the refinery by ship or through pipes. At the refinery, it is separated into different petroleum products.

Many different products are made from-petroleum. You probably know that the petrol people put in their cars comes from petroleum. Did you know that everyday items such as crayons and bubble gum are made from petroleum? It is even used in complex equipment like artificial hearts that can help save lives. Some people worry that petroleum products damage the environment, but cleaner products are being developed by petroleum companies.

What do you think each item in the pictures is used for?

الاستخدامات التالية مهمة كفراغات ضمن قطع الكتاب لان القطعة مطلوبة تحريري

- The rock samples and the radar map help locate petroleum in the ground.
  تساعد عينات الصخور وخريطة الرادار في تحديد مكان البترول في الأرض.
- A derrick holds tools and pipes that are used in the well. رافعة يحمل الأدوات والأنابيب التي تستخدم في البئر.
- A pipeline carries the petroleum from one place to another. خط أنابيب ينقل البترول من مكان إلى آخر.
- Petroleum is separated into different products at a refinery. يتم فصل البترول إلى منتجات مختلفة في المصفاة.
- A petrol station is where people can buy petrol, a petroleum product, to put in their cars.
  محطة البنزين هي المكان الذي يمكن للناس فيه شراء البنزين، أحد المنتجات البترولية، لوضعها في سياراتهم.

- Some refined oil is used to make thousands of products we use every day.
  يتم استخدام بعض النفط المكررة لصنع آلاف المنتجات التي نستخدمها كل يوم.
- To find petroleum, rock samples, satellite images and radar maps are studied.
  للعثور على البترول، يتم دراسة عينات الصخور وصور الأقمار الصناعية وخرائط الرادار.
- The petroleum is sent to a refinery, where it will be separated into different products.
  يتم إرسال البترول إلى مصفاة حيث سيتم فصله إلى منتجات مختلفة.
- When petroleum has been found, a derrick is built and a well is drilled.
  عندما يتم العثور على البترول ، يتم بناء مضخة نفط وحفر بئر.

The passive Grammar and functions reference p.101

- Form the passive with the verb be + past participle. _ · .
  Petroleum was formed millions of years ago. (past simple passive)
- Use the passive when you don't know who performed the action, or when the action is more important than who did it.

استخدم المبني للمجهول عندما لا تعرف من قام بالإجراء ، أو عندما يكون الإجراء أكثر أهمية من الشخص الذي قام به.

❖ The passive المبني للمجهول

❖ Form الصيغة

➤ Form the passive with the verb to be + past participle

Tenses ازمنة	Form صيغة	Example مثال	حل
Present simple المضارع البسيط • للتمييز فاعل + فعل مضارع(مجرد /s,es)	I am We You They Are مفعول به + + p.p He/She/It is	I clean the room.	The room is cleaned by me.
Present continuous المضارع المستمر • للتمييز فاعل + am/is/are + Ving	I am We You They Are مفعول به + + being + p.p He/She/It is	I am cleaning the room.	The room is being cleaned.
Past simple الماضي البسيط • للتمييز فاعل + فعل ماضي (ed/ شاذ)	I /He/She/It Was مفعول به + + p.p We/You/They were	I cleaned the room.	The room was cleaned.
Present perfect simple المضارع التام البسيط • للتمييز فاعل + have/has + p.p	He/She/It has مفعول به + + been + p.p I/We/You/They have	I have cleaned the room.	The room has been cleaned.
Future simple مستقبل بسيط • للتمييز فاعل + will + فعل مصدر مجرد	He/She/It مفعول به + will + be + p.p I/We/You/They	I will clean the room.	The room will be cleaned.
With the model can • للتمييز فاعل + can + فعل + مفعول به	He/She/It مفعول به + can + be + p.p I/We/You/They	I can clean the room.	The room can be cleaned.

❖ Use الاستخدام

➢ Use the passive when you don't know who performed the action, or when the action is more important than who did it.

استخدم المبني للمجهول عندما لا تعرف من قام بالإجراء، أو عندما يكون الإجراء أكثر أهمية من الشخص الذي قام به.

- This map is too old. It was made in 7990. (The date the map was made is important, but the person who made it is not.)
- My tools have been stolen. (We don't know who stole them.)

➢ Use by when you want to say who did the action.

استخدم by عندما تريد أن تقول من قام بالإجراء.

- Our petroleum products are bought by many countries.

❖ كيفية تحويل الجملة من المبني للمعلوم الى المبني للمجهول في اللغة الانكليزية

لماذا نستخدم المبني للمجهول

نستخدم المبني للمجهول عندما لا نعرف من قام بالفعل أو التصرف، أو عندما يكون الحدث(الفعل) أهم من القائم بها (الفاعل)

- في المبني للمعلوم؛ الفاعل يُنفذ الفعل (الحدث)
- في المبني للمجهول؛ الفاعل يتلقى(يستلم) الفعل(الحدث)

1. أولا ميز زمن الجملة (هل الجملة مضارع أم ماضي أم مستقبل)

2. ثُم جد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول به.(SVO)

Subject فاعل	verb فعل	object مفعول به
Ahmed	cleaned	the room.

3. حول المفعول به الى مكان الفاعل (بداية الجملة) وانتبه عند تحويل المفعول به هل هو مفرد أم جمع

ملاحظة إذا أردت ذكر الفاعل أكتب by قبلها في نهاية الجملة

The room Was cleaned by Ahmed

3. أستخدم الفعل المساعد المناسب للزمن (هل الزمن مضارع بسيط أم مستمر أم تام)

إذا تم إعطاء فعل مساعد أستخدمها كما هو . ولكن تذكر أن تستخدم فعل مساعد مناسب للمفعول به المحول لمكان الفاعل (هل هو مفرد أم جمع)

- لفهم الفعل المساعد

فاعل مفرد: I أنا → am

He هو، She هي، It إنها / إنه → is

الفاعل الجمع: We نحن، You أنتَ/أنتِ/أنتما/أنتم/أنتن، They هُم/هُما/هُنّ → are

فاعل مفرد: He, she, it → has

فاعل جمع: I, we, you, they → have

4. حول الفعل الى التصريف الثالث p.p (الشكل الثالث للفعل) (see, saw, seen)

Ahmed saw Ali.
Ali was seen by Ahmed.

الخطوات سهلة جداً.

1. جد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول به
2. ميز زمن الجملة لتقوم بمراعاة التحويل حسب الزمن
3. ضع المفعول به في بداية الجملة
4. استخدم مساعد مناسب حسب الزمن مضارع = am/is/are ماضي = was/were ....الخ
5. نزل الفعل تصريف ثالث بعد المساعد مباشرة (ما عدا انتبه أن can وwill أفعال ناقصة تأتي بعدهم be قبل التصريف الثالث.
6. اذا اردت ذكر فاعل الجملة المبني للمعلوم او كان مهما ذكره استخدم قبله by

A page 120 **Put the main stages of the process in order. Number them 1 to 5.**

- 5 Some refined oil is used to make thousands of products we use every day.
- 1 To find petroleum, rock samples, satellite images and radar maps are studied.
- 4 The petroleum is sent to a refinery, where it will be separated into different products.
- 2 When it has been found, a derrick is built and a well is drilled.
- 3 When the oil is reached, it gushes up through the pipes.

B page 120 **Look back at the pictures on Student's Book page 80. Use them to describe the main stages of the process.**

To find petroleum, rock samples, satellite images and radar maps are studied. When it has been found, a derrick is built and a well is drilled. Then when the oil is reached, it gushes up through the pipes. After that, the petroleum is sent to a refinery, where it will be separated into different products. Finally, Some refined oil is used to make thousands of products we use every day.

C page 120 **Find examples of these passive forms in the text:**

تمرين مهم

the present simple passive	the past simple passive
the present perfect simple passive	the present continuous passive

1 The present simple passive = Petroleum is not found everywhere

2 The past simple passive = Animals and plants died and were covered by layers of mud and water

3 The present perfect simple passive = When petroleum has been found in an area

4 The present continuous passive = cleaner products are being developed by petroleum companies

D page 120 **Match the two halves of each sentence. Then change the active sentences into passive sentences.**

تمرين مهم

1 Petroleum has	a) being built.
2 The radar maps are	b) be completed soon.
3 Another oil well will	c) been used since the 19th century.
4 The derrick will	d) be drilled in the spring.
5 A new refinery is	e) being studied by our geologists.

- 1c; 2e; 3d; 46; 5a

Activity book – page 121

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
disappointed	مخيب	access	ولوج / وصول	Shopping online	التسوق عبر الإنترنت
adults	بالغين	teenagers	مراهقين	special	مميز
reason	سبب	carry	يحمل	deliver	يسلم / ينقل / يوصل
heavy	ثقيل	spend	ينفق / يقضي	price	سعر / ثمن
lowest	الادنى	disadvantages	سلبيات	problem	مشكلة
steal	يسرق	picture	صورة	toy	لعبة

A **page 121** **Read about the advantages and disadvantages of online shopping. Is the author mostly for or against it?**

ONLINE SHOPPING

More and more families are getting computers and Internet access and many adults and teenagers are buying products online. Many people think online shopping is wonderful, but many others like it, or are afraid to try it out. Let's look at some of the reasons why.

Shopping online is easier than shopping in a shop. One reason for this is you don't have to leave your home. Have you ever driven or walked from shop to shop looking for something very special and come home exhausted at the end of the day? With online shopping; you can visit hundreds of stores from your home. **It is also easier because you don't have to carry heavy shopping bags**. When you go to the mall, you have to carry everything with you. You may try to do a lot of shopping at once to save time. Your bags get heavier and you get tired. If you buy what you need online, it is delivered to your house and you don't need. to carry it at all.

Another reason people like-shopping online is that it can be less expensive. Shopkeepers spend money to take care of their shops. Because of this, they often charge more for their products. Products that you buy online often don't come from a real shop, so they can cost less. **It is also easier to compare prices on the Internet to find the lowest one.**

However, there are **disadvantages** to shopping online. **One is that you can be disappointed when the product arrives**. This can happen because you can't see or touch the real product when you shop online. You can only look at a picture. This is usually not a problem if you buy a book or a computer game, but imagine what can happen if you-buy shoes online. They may be too big or too small. If you open your box and find your new toy is broken, You really feel bad.

Is it safe to buy online? Can people find out information about you and steal your money? Yes, they can if you are not careful. **You should always make sure you are shopping on a safe site**. If there is a little picture of a lock at the bottom of your screen, the site is safe.

Shopping online can have disadvantages. However, if you **think carefully about what you buy and where you buy it, it can save you time and money.**

Is the author mostly for or against it?
The last paragraph indicates that the writer is mostly in favour of it.

FADHIL ALQASSAP

B page Highlight the important parts of the text. Then write a summary of the main points.

just like any other piece of writing, the ideas in a summary have to be organized and linked

تمامًا مثل أي جزء آخر من الكتابة، يجب تنظيم الأفكار الموجودة في الملخص وربطها

Shopping online is easy because you don't have to travel anywhere and you don't have to carry anything. It can also be cheaper because the people selling things online don't have the expense of running a shop and because you can easily compare prices online and find the cheapest.

There are two disadvantages. First, you may be disappointed when the things you buy arrive. For example, clothes may not fit you. Secondly, shopping can be unsafe, but not if you use a safe site.

C page Work with two partners. Say what you think about shopping online. Think about what the text said and these questions:

1 What kinds of things can you buy online?
Nowadays I thing everything.
2 Do you agree with the advantages discussed in the text?
Yes, I do.
3 Can you think of any other advantages?
Yes, I can.
You can find what you are looking for faster.
4 Do you agree with the disadvantages discussed in the text?
Yes, I do.
5 Can you think of any other disadvantages?
Yes. I can.
Most companies don't offer a "try before you buy" policy.

6 Do you like going to shops? Why? / Why not?
No,
I'm not a big fan of shopping.

7 Have you ever bought anything online?
No, I haven't yet.

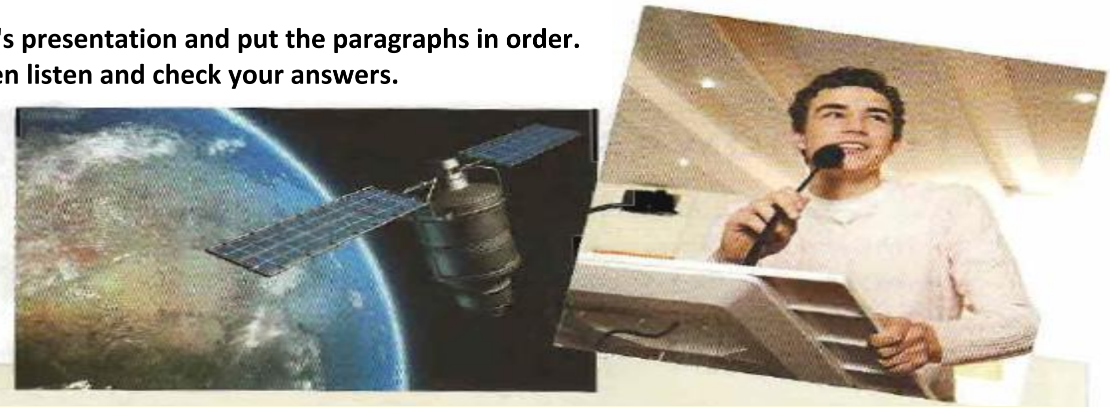
8 Would you like to?
If I trust the website, why not.

A presentation – page 81 – عرض

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
presentation	عرض	revolve	يدور	orbit	يدور في مدار
launch	إطلاق	space shuttle	مكوك فضائي	solar panel	لوحة شمسية
rocket	صاروخ	fibreglass	الألياف الزجاجية	forecast	تنبؤ بالمناخ
meteorologist	عالم أرصاد جوية	communication	اتصال	radios	أجهزة الراديو
receive	يستقبل	conversations	محادثة	Earth	أرض
solar panels	الألواح الشمسية	stick out	يبرز	metal	فلز
light and strong	خفيف وقوي	planet	كوكب	man-made	من صنع الإنسان
sky	سماء	path	طريق	distance	مسافة: بعد
varies	يختلف	far	بعيد	destruction	دمار
Global positioning system, or 'GPS'.	نظام تحديد المواقع العالمي، أو"GPS"	rainforests	الغابات المطيرة	picnic	نزهة / فسحة

صوت 77

- **Read Jaber's presentation and put the paragraphs in order.**
  صوت 77 Then listen and check your answers.



3 A Right. Now let me tell you what is in a satellite. Satellites carry different equipment, depending on the job they have to do. Satellites that we use for telephone communication have radios that can receive and send conversations. Many satellites have cameras, so they can send pictures back to Earth. All satellites need a source of power. Most satellites have solar panels, which get energy from the sun. Take a look at this picture. The solar panels are the long parts that stick out of the body. The body of the satellite can be made of many things, such as metal or fibreglass. It has to be light and strong.

2 B A satellite is something that revolves around a planet. That means that the moon is a satellite, but there are also thousands of man-made satellites in the sky. These satellites are launched into the sky by a rocket or the space shuttle. The path of a satellite around the Earth is called an orbit. The distance of the orbit from the Earth varies. Some satellites orbit the Earth from 480 km away. Others are really far - over 35,000 km away.

4 C Now I'll talk about what satellites are used for. You may know that they help us receive television programmes and give meteorologists information they use in weather forecasts. But do you know that satellites can take pictures from the sky that are used to make maps? Some pictures can help scientists see environmental problems more clearly, for example, the destruction of rainforests. Without satellites, cars couldn't have a global positioning system, or 'GPS'. GPS is even better than a map. A map shows you where you want to go, but GPS also shows you where you are.

1 D My presentation is about satellites. Satellites are a part of our everyday lives, but many people don't know what they are or what they're for. So, first I'll tell you what a satellite is. Then I'll talk about what is in a satellite. Finally, I'll talk about some of the different things that satellites are used for. If you have any questions, you can ask them at the end of my presentation.

5 E Next time you watch your favourite TV programme, or plan to go for a picnic on a sunny day, remember, it may be thanks to a satellite! Now, do you have any questions?

A page 122 Find these words in the text on Student's Book page 81. Try to work out their meaning and use them in sentences of your own.

- solar panel لوحة شمسية satellites need <u>solar panels</u> to get energy from the sun.
- fiberglass الألياف الزجاجية
  The body of the satellite can be made of many things, such as metal or <u>fibreglass</u>.
- revolve يدور satellite <u>revolves</u> around a planet.
- launch يطلق satellites are <u>launched</u> into the sky by a rocket.
- orbit يدور في مدار The path of a satellite around the Earth is called an <u>orbit</u>.

B page 123 Complete the expressions the boy uses with words from the box. Check your answers in the Student's Book.

me tell you دعني أقول لك	Do you have any هل لديك أي	I'll tell سأقول	Finally اخيرا
Now الان	Take a look at القي نظرة	I'll talk سوف اتكلم	

To say what he is going to talk about. ليقول ما الذي سيتحدث عنه

1 First <u>I'll tell</u> you what a satellite is.
2 Then <u>I'll talk</u> about what is in a satellite.
3 <u>Finally</u>, I'll talk about some of the things that satellites are used for.

To move on to a new topic. للانتقال إلى موضوع جديد

4 Right. Now let <u>me tell you</u> what is in a satellite.
5 <u>Now</u> I'll talk about what satellites are used for.

To tell the class to look at a picture. لإخبار الفصل بالنظر إلى الصورة

6 <u>Take a look at</u> this picture.

To tell the class they can ask questions. لإخبار الفصل بأنه يمكنهم طرح الأسئلة

7 <u>Do you have any</u> questions?

C page 123 78 صوت Listen and repeat the expressions in Exercise B.استمع وكرر التعبيرات في التمرين

D page 123 Work with a partner. Read these sentences aloud. Which words do you think are stressed? Underline them.

1 <u>Rubber trees</u> grow in the rainforest, but <u>cactii</u> grow in the <u>desert</u>.
2 <u>John</u> wants to be a geologist, but <u>Omer</u> wants to be a <u>meteorologist</u>.
3 <u>This machine</u> can only <u>print</u> documents, but <u>that machine</u> can <u>copy</u> them too.
4 <u>My</u> camera weighs 300 grams, but my <u>brother's</u> camera weighs <u>500</u> grams.
5 <u>A map</u> shows you where you want to <u>go</u>, but GPS also shows you where you <u>are</u>.

E page 123 79 صوت Listen and check your answers in Exercise D. Then listen and repeat.

❖ الواجب البيتي صحيفة (124)

Prepare for the next lesson.استعد للدرس التالي

You are going to write and give a presentation about a planet in the next lesson. Find information in books or on the Internet to answer the questions below in note form. Add any information you think might interest your class. If you can find a picture of the planet, bring it to class too.

ستكتب وتقدم عرضًا تقديميًا عن كوكب في الدرس التالي. ابحث عن المعلومات
في الكتب أو على الإنترنت للإجابة على الأسئلة أدناه في شكل ملاحظة. أضف أي معلومات
تعتقد أنه قد يثير اهتمام فصلك. إذا تمكنت من العثور على صورة للكوكب، فقم بإحضارها إلى الفصل أيضًا.

- What is its name?
- What does it look like?
- How big is it?
- How far is it from the Earth?
- What is the temperature on the planet?
- What is its position from the sun?
- Is it flat or mountainous?
- Does it have a satellite?
- Is there anything unusual about it?
- When was it discovered?
- What is it made of?
- Has it been studied by any spacecraft?
- Other

- your text can be quite short, but the information still needs to be presented in a logical order

يمكن أن يكون نصك قصيرًا جدًا، لكن المعلومات لا تزال بحاجة إلى تقديمها بترتيب منطقي

A possible sequence is:

- name and size compared to other planets
- what is known about it
- whether the planet is being investigated today.

These should fit into all the presentations after an introduction:

يجب أن تتناسب هذه مع جميع العروض التقديمية بعد المقدمة:

- Right. Now I'll talk about ...
- Do you have any questions?

add any of these to your notes. Remember to include a reference to the picture of your planet if you have one.

أضف أيًا من هذه إلى ملاحظاتك. تذكر تضمين إشارة إلى صورة كوكبك إذا كان لديك واحد.

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
mercury /ˈmɜːkjərɪ/	عطارد	rocky planet /ˈplænɪt/	كوكب صخري	spacecraft	مركبة فضائية
visit	يزور	parts of the planet	أجزاء من الكوكب	rest of the planet	بقية الكوكب
listen	يستمع	repeat /rɪˈpiːt/	يعيد	speaker	مكبر صوت / متحدث

what is important when someone is giving a talk. ما هو المهم عندما يتحدث شخص ما

The speaker.

- **Mustn't speak too softly.**
- **shouldn't hesitate.**
- **should pronounce his/her words well.**

- **Read the extracts from the presentation on 5B81 very softly, hesitatingly and with poor pronunciation.**
اقرأ المقتطفات من العرض التقديمي على الصفحة B815 بهدوء شديد وتردد وسوء النطق.

- **Read the following to demonstrate the need to deliver language in chunks that make sense:**
اقرأ ما يلي لإثبات الحاجة إلى تقديم اللغة بأجزاء منطقية:

Satellites carry (pause) different equipment depending (pause) on the job they have (pause) to do. (These chunks don't make sense!)

use other sentences in the same way. استخدم جمل أخرى بنفس الطريقة

- **it is important to pause and take a breath at places where the words will make sense to the listener.**
من المهم أن تتوقف وتأخذ نفسًا في الأماكن التي تكون فيها الكلمات منطقية للمستمع.

you are going to practise this. ستتمرن على هذا
listen to the audio and mark the places where the speaker pauses in Exercise A.
استمع إلى الصوت وحدد الأماكن التي يتوقف فيها المتحدث مؤقتًا في التمرين A.

A **page 124 80 صوت Listen and mark a slash (/) in the sentences in the places where the speaker pauses to breathe.**

Mercury is a rocky planet like the Earth. Mariner 10, a spacecraft, visited Mercury in 1974 and 1975. It took pictures of some parts of the planet. A new spacecraft was launched in 2004 and started orbiting Mercury in 2011. It is taking pictures of the rest of the planet.

81 صوت Now listen again and repeat

Mercury is a rocky planet like the **Earth/**. Mariner 10, a **spacecraft/**, visited Mercury in 1974 and **1975/**. It took pictures of some parts of the **planet/**. A new spacecraft was launched in **2004/** and started orbiting Mercury in **2011/**. It takes pictures of the rest of the planet.

Checking the answers

- **Does the speaker pause after a comma or a full stop? (Yes.)**
- **Does the speaker pause after an article or a preposition? (No.)**

- **Does the speaker pause anywhere else? (Yes, after 2004. this is because the sentence is quite long - it has two clauses, so it is better to pause before the second clause.)**

A science report – page 82 – تقرير علمي

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
endangered	مهددة بالخطر	belly	بطن	enemy	عدو
beak	منقار	sponge	اسفنجة	coral /ˈkɒr(ə)l/	المرجان
lay eggs	يضع البيض	illegal /ɪˈliːg(ə)l/	غير شرعي/ غير قانوني	access	وصول / الأذن بالدخول
examine	يفحص	obtain	يحصل	inform	يخبر
marine biologist	عالم أحياء البحرية	hawksbill	منقار الصقر	Hawk/hɔːk/	الصقر
jellyfish	قناديل البحر	rocks	صخور	branches	فروع
shape	شكل	hatch	يفقس	mouth	فم

- Read the report and find the missing sentences in Exercise A in the Activity Book.

The hawksbill sea turtle



1) The hawksbill is a medium-sized sea turtle with a very beautiful shell. Its shell is o mixture of dark end light colours and ifs belly is white or yellow. Its colours help ii hide from which looks o bit like the beak of a hawk. The hawksbill weighs about 60 kilograms and is about one metre long. The hawksbill sea turtle lives in the Atlantic, Pacific end Indian Oceans.

2) These sea turtles find their food at the bottom of the ocean. They eat sponges, jellyfish and other small sea animals and plants. The shape of their mouth helps them get food from between rocks or branches of coral. Although the turtles spend most of their time in the water, females come out to lay their eggs on the beach. When the babies hatch, they run straight into the water.

3) Although hawksbill turtles have been protected for years, they are still endangered. Hunting there for their shells is now illegal. However, their habitat is being destroyed. When examining dead turtles, scientists have observed that some had rubbish in their stomachs. It appears that turtles think that pieces of plastic ore food. They ea! them and fall ill and die. These turtles are rare, and there are things we can do to help them survive. First of all, we must not pollute. We can also help scientists obtain information about these rare creatures by informing marine biologists if we see any sea turtles on the beach.

Contrasting information Grammar and functions reference p.101

- Use however, although and but to introduce contrasting or surprising information.

استخدم مع ذلك، على الرغم من و لكن لتقديم معلومات متناقضة أو مفاجئة.

  - Hunting for them is illegal. However, they are still endangered.
  - Hunting for them is illegal. They are still endangered, however.
  - These turtles are rare, but there are things we can do to help them survive.
  - Although the turtles spend most of their time in the water females come out to lay their eggs.

❖ Contrastive link words: although, however, but
❖ كلمات الربط المتناقضة: بالرغم من، على أي حال (مع ذلك) ولكن

Contrasting information with however, although and but (page 82)

❖ Use الاستخدام

- Use however, although and but to introduce or link contrasting or surprising information.

استخدم مع ذلك، على الرغم من ولكن لتقديم أو ربط معلومات متناقضة أو مفاجئة.

however

- Put however at the beginning or the end of a sentence that contrasts with the sentence before it.

ضع مع ذلك في بداية أو نهاية الجملة التي تتعارض مع الجملة السابقة عليها.

Turtles live in many parts of the ocean. However, they are endangered.
Turtles live in many parts of the ocean. They are endangered, however.

but

- Put but in the middle of a sentence, to introduce a contrasting idea.

ضع لكن في منتصف الجملة لتقديم فكرة متناقضة.

Turtles were once hunted for their shells, but hunting them is now illegal.

although

- Put although at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence when the other clause contains surprising information.

ضع بالرغم من ذلك في بداية الجملة أو في منتصفها عندما تحتوي الجملة الأخرى على معلومات مفاجئة.

Although the baby turtles have just hatched, they know how to find the ocean.
The baby turtles know how to find the ocean, although they have just hatched.

❖ شكل الاسئلة

More examples. امثلة أكثر

- I stayed up late, (but / and) I couldn't finish my homework. (choose أختر)
- (Although / however) the desktop computer is cheaper, I want to buy a laptop. (choose أختر)
- It will be sunny in most of the UK. ____ however______, it may rain in London. (complete with a suitable contrastive link word) أكمل بكلمة ربط مناسبة

Activity book – page 125

A page 125 Skim the report on Student's Book page 66. Match these sentences to the correct paragraph. Write numbers 1 to 3.

a) Although hawksbill turtles have been protected for years, they are still endangered. [3]

b) The hawksbill is a medium-sized sea turtle with a very beautiful shell. [1]

c) These sea turtles find their food at the bottom of the ocean. [2]

B page 125 Read the summary. Find five mistakes and rewrite the summary on the lines.

You can recognize the hawksbill turtle because of its pretty eggs and its unusual mouth, which looks like a jellyfish. It eats sea animals and coral. It comes out of the ocean only to sleep. These sea turtles are protected, but they are endangered by fishermen. We can all help protect them by being more careful with our rubbish.

You can recognize the hawksbill turtle because of its pretty shell and its unusual mouth, which looks like a beak. It eats sea animals and plants. It comes out of the ocean only to lay its eggs. These sea turtles are protected, but they are endangered by pollution. We can all help protect them by being more careful with our rubbish.

C page 125 Read and match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

تمارين التوصيل على الأكثر تستخدم كما هي ضمن فرع المرادفات

1 Although we have been studying these animals for years,
2 We went to the beach to look for turtle eggs,
3 I know you like books about mammals.
4 Not many baby turtles survive,
5 People used to make jewellery from turtle shells, about them.

a) However, I think you'll really enjoy this book about sea turtles.
b) although thousands of them are born.
c) but it is now illegal.
d) but we didn't find any.
e) we still have very little information

- le; 2d; 3a; 46; 5c

D page 126 Find words or phrases in the last paragraph of the report that mean the same as:

تمرين مهم جدا ضمن الاملاء

Synonyms = مرادف (نفس المعنى)

1 look at carefully examining يتفحص
2 see observed راقب
3 seems appears يبدو
4 get obtain يحصل
5 tell informing يخبر

Round up – page 83 - مراجعة

Activity book – page 126

A page 126 **Look back at the report on Student's Book page 82. What are the topics of the paragraphs?**
راجع التقرير الموجود على صفحة كتاب الطالب 82. ما هي موضوعات الفقرات؟

1 appearance/ what they look like
2 what they eat / habitat
3 dangers

B page 126 **Write a report about a marine animal.** اكتب تقريرًا عن حيوان بحري

organize their ideas and write a draft.
80-120 words.
follow the Checklist for written work.

Remember!

- Qrganiz your ideas and decide on the topics of your paragrphs.
- decide on the details you will include to suppprt each topic.
- Write a first draft.
- Check your draft and ask yourself: How can I make it better?

White sharks



**the legendary white fish is far less fearsome in reality.
As scientific research on these elusive predators increases, their image as mindless killing machines is beginning to fade. They have slate-gray upper bodies to blend in with the rocky coastal sea floor, but they get their name from their white underbellies. They're streamlined, torpedo-shaped swimmers with powerful tails that can propel them through the water at speeds of up to 15 miles per hour. They can even leave the water completely, breaching like whales when attacking prey from underneath. They grow to an average of 15 feet in length, though specimens exceeding 20 feet and weighing up to 5,000 pounds have been recorded.**

They have an exceptional sense of smell to detect prey. They even have organs that can sense the tiny electromagnetic fields generated by animals. Their prey includes other sharks, crustaceans, molluscs, and sea birds. Larger white sharks will also prey on sea lions, seals, and small toothed whales like orcas. The species has even been seen feeding on dead whales. They Found in cool, coastal waters around the world, great whites are the largest predatory fish on Earth.

There is no reliable population data for the great white shark, but scientists agree that their number are decreasing precipitously. Overfishing and getting accidentally caught in fishing nets are their two biggest threats. The species is classified as vulnerable—one step away from being endangered.

أسماك القرش البيضاء

السمكة البيضاء الأسطورية أقل رعبا في الواقع.
مع زيادة البحث العلمي حول هذه الحيوانات المفترسة المراوغة،
بدأت صورتهم كآلات قتل طائشة تتلاشى.
لديهم أجسام علوية رمادية اللون لتندمج مع
قاع البحر الساحلي الصخري، لكنهم حصلوا على اسمهم من
بطونهم البيضاء. إنهم سباحون انسيابيون على شكل طوربيد مع ذيول قوية يمكنها دفعهم عبر الماء بسرعات تصل إلى 15 ميلاً في الساعة. يمكنهم حتى ترك الماء تمامًا، مثل الحيتان عند مهاجمة الفريسة من الأسفل. يصل طولها إلى 15 قدمًا في المتوسط ، على الرغم من أن العينات التي تجاوزت 20 قدمًا ووزنها يصل إلى 5000 رطل تم تسجيلها.

لديهم حاسة شم استثنائية لاكتشاف الفريسة. لديهم حتى أعضاء يمكنها استشعار الحقول الكهرومغناطيسية الدقيقة التي تولدها الحيوانات. تشمل فرائسها أسماك القرش الأخرى والقشريات والرخويات وطيور البحر. ستفترس أسماك القرش البيضاء الكبيرة أيضًا أسود البحر، والفقمة، والحيتان الصغيرة ذات الأسنان مثل الأوراك. وقد شوهدت هذه الأنواع تتغذى على الحيتان الميتة، وتوجد في المياه الساحلية الباردة حول العالم، وهي أكبر الأسماك المفترسة على وجه الأرض.

لا توجد بيانات سكانية موثوقة لسمك القرش الأبيض الكبير، لكن العلماء يتفقون على أن عددهم يتناقص بشكل سريع. يعتبر الصيد الجائر والوقوع في شباك الصيد من أكبر التهديدات. يتم تصنيف الأنواع على أنها معرضة للخطر ـ على بعد خطوة واحدة من كونها مهددة بالانقراض.

Revision

A page 126 **Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences to learn how to revise for a test.**

1 If you revise a little bit every day,
2 If you use the round up page,
3 It will be more fun
4 If you read your learning diary,
5 Don't wait until the last minute to ask your teacher for help
6 If you try to use some of the words in your vocabulary notebook every day,
7 If you revise the night before an exam,
8 You will do much better

a) it will not help you.
b) if you get plenty of sleep the night before an exam.
c) you will soon learn them.
d) if you work with a friend.
e) you will have a clear revision programme.
f) you will find answers to your questions.
g) if you don't understand something.
h) you will remember information better.

- 1h, 2e, 3d, 4f, 5g, 6c, 7a, 8b

B page 127 **Match the beginnings and endings to make words from the unit.**

definition is a noun. التعريف هو اسم.
But orbit can be a noun and a verb. لكن المدار يمكن أن يكون اسمًا وفعلًا.

1 mem	a) lite	memory - definition 10
2 geo	b) ak	geologist - definition 3
3 der	c) logist	derrick - definition 5
4 hur	d) ker	hurricane - definition 4
5 be	e) it	beak - definition 7
6 tan	f) ery	tanker - definition 9
7 satel	g) ch	satellite - definition 8
8 laun	h) ory	launch - definition 6
9 orb	i) rick	orbit - definition 2
10 refin	j) icane	refinery - definition 1

C page 127 **Match the words in Exercise B with their definitions.**

التعاريف مهمة جدا نصا. كتوصيل

1 a place where petroleum is processed. refinery مصفاة. مكان يتم فيه معالجة البترول.

2 the circle a satellite makes around a planet. orbit مدار. الدائرة التي يصنعها القمر الصناعي حول كوكب.

3 a person who studies the Earth. geologist جيولوجي. الشخص الذي يدرس الأرض.

4 a dangerous storm. hurricane اعصار. عاصفة خطيرة.

5 something that is built over a petroleum well. derrick مضخة نفط. شيء مبني فوق بئر بترول.

6 to put a satellite into space. launch إطلاق. لوضع قمر صناعي في الفضاء.

7 a bird's mouth. beak منقار. فم الطائر.

8 something that revolves around a planet. satellite الأقمار الصناعية. شيء يدور حول كوكب.

9 a ship for carrying petroleum or gas. tanker ناقلة. سفينة لنقل البترول أو الغاز.

10 software in your computer that holds information. memory ذاكرة. برنامج في جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بك يحتفظ بالمعلومات.

Test

A page 128 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb. Then write your own sentence with zero or first conditional.

تمرين مهم جدا نصا

show	turn	rise	be	want	give	see

1 If the light is green, the machine is on.
2 If air gets hot, it rises
3 If you watch Channel 3 tonight, you might/will see me on TV.
4 If you don't know what to write about, I will give you some ideas.
5 If you want, I will show you how the machine works.
6 If it's hot, the teacher turns/will turn on the fan.
7 If you tell Meera you're going to Cornwall, she might/will want ____ to go too.

Now write a sentence of your own.

8 if it rains, I might stay at home.

B page 128 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verb (one present simple, one past simple, one future simple, one present continuous and one present perfect).

تمرين مهم جداً

1 This book was written (write) by my favourite author.
2 In the future, more endangered animals will be protected (protect) from hunters.
3 Today, more gas is being sold (sell) to other countries than before.
4 Petroleum is used (use) in thousands of everyday products.
5 Our new offices have not been built (build) yet.

C page 129 Complete the sentences with words from the unit.

1 The moon orbits the Earth.
2 Did you listen to the weather forecast this morning? It's going to be very hot.
3 Geologists can use rock samples to help them find petroleum.
4 A hurricane is a very big storm that forms over warm water.
5 Some marine biologists work on boats so that they can study marine life far from land.
6 Petroleum is sent to a refinery to be changed into different petroleum products.
7 Satellites help us get TV programmes from many countries.
8 Rockets are used to launch satellites into space.
9 Meteorologists try to warn people if they know a big storm is coming.
10 I have a really bad memory and can't remember anyone's names!

D page 129 **Match the words that go together. Write the letters next to the numbers.**

توصيل مهم

1 test	a) samples	1	e	test-tube	أنبوب اختبار
2 water	b) destination	2	a	water sample	عينة الماء
3 solar	c) industry	3	g	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
4 radar	d) technologies	4	f	Rader map	خريطة الرادار
5 gas	e) tube	5	c	gas industry	صناعة الغاز
6 natural	f) map	6	h	natural reserves	المحميات الطبيعية
7 new	g) panels	7	d	new technology	تكنولوجيا جديدة
8 final	h) reserves	8	6	final destination	المصير الحتمي

- 1e; 2a; 3g; 4f; 5c; 6h; 7d; 86

Write a sentence with one of the pairs.

- Most satellites have solar panels, which get energy from the sun.

E page 130 **Read about Saturn and answer the questions.**

Saturn is a giant planet. Second only to Jupiter, the largest planet in our solar system, Saturn is ten times as wide as Earth. Unlike Earth, it is not a rocky planet but is made mainly of gases. When people think of Saturn, they think of its rings. The rings were first seen in 1610. At the time, telescopes were not very strong and the rings were not very clear. Today, if you look through a modern telescope, you will see that Saturn has hundreds of rings. They are mostly made of ice, although some contain small rocks.
Several spacecraft have visited Saturn. The first three visits were by Pioneer II in 1979, Voyager 1 in 1980 and Voyager 2 in 1981. Today, the spacecraft Cassini is visiting Saturn. Cassini is sending back pictures of Saturn's rings and moons. Saturn has over 40 moons, many of them very small. Most of them orbit Saturn at the edge of the rings, but pictures from Cassini have shown us that at least two small moons orbit inside Saturn's rings. Cassini is also sending back a lot of pictures of Saturn's largest moon, Titan. Scientists hope these pictures will help them understand how Titan was formed.

1 What planet is larger than Saturn?
   Jupiter is larger than Saturn.
2 What is Saturn made of?
   It is mostly made of gases.
3 How is Saturn different from Earth?
   Saturn is much wider than Earth and it is made of gases, not rocks.
4 What are Saturn's rings made of?
   Saturn's rings are mostly ice, with some small rocks.
5 Where do Saturn's moons orbit?
   Most of them orbit at the edge of the rings, but some orbit inside the rings.

GPS receivers – page 86 - مستقبلات نظام تحديد المواقع العالمي (مطلوب تحريري)

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
rescuers	رجال الانقاذ	experience	خبرة	hand-held	محمول باليد
receiver	الجهاز المستقبل	unexpected	غير متوقع	network	شبكة الاتصال
knowledge	معرفة	highlands	المرتفعات	snowstorm	عاصفة ثلجية
hiking	تنزه	hiker	متنزه	Aviemore	أفيمور (مدينة ومنتجع)
experienced	ذو خبرة	worried	قلق	broke his fall	أوقف سقوطه
screamed	صرخ	die	يموت	rucksack	حقيبة ظهر
lucky	محظوظ	reporters	المراسلين	he lost his footing	فقد موطئ قدمه

- What do you know about GPS receivers? Which of these articles will give you information about them?
- Read this article and do Exercises A and B in the Activity Book.

GPS Helps Rescuers Find Hiker

An injured hiker was rescued in the Scottish Highlands yesterday. Rescuers found Paul Dupont, a hiker from France, thanks to his GPS receiver.



Paul was hiking in the hills near Aviemore when there was an unexpected snowstorm. He decided to turn back because he knew that it could be dangerous to be out in this area alone in bad weather, even in the autumn. ‘The snow began to fall faster and thicker,’ said Paul, ‘and 1 couldn’t see very far ahead.’

Paul continued walking. An experienced hiker, he was not very worried. Then, suddenly, he lost his footing. The next minute, he was sliding down a long hill and gathering speed. A rock eventually broke his fall. Paul tried to stand up. ‘I screamed in pain,’ he said, ‘and fell down again. I knew I had broken my leg.’

Fortunately, Paul had a mobile phone in his pocket and he called the police. He told them he was hurt and unable to walk. ‘But I didn’t know where I was. It had become very cold,' he said, ‘and I was afraid I was going to die.’ However, Paul remembered that he had a GPS receiver in his rucksack. He used it to find where he was on a map and he was able to tell the police. Twenty minutes later, a mountain-rescue helicopter arrived to take him to hospital. ‘I’m very lucky,’ he told reporters. ‘I’m alive, thanks to my GPS receiver.'

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
connect	يتصل	Radio signals	إشارات الراديو	measure	يقيس
reach	يصل	distance	مسافة	position	موقع
calculate	يحسب	map	خريطة	outdoors	في الهواء الطلق

- **Read this text and find out how a G PS receiver works. Then do Exercises C and D in the Activity Book.**

HOW A GPS RECEIVER WORKS

Most people know it Is possible to buy a Car with a Global Positioning system. What many people do not know is that you can also get a hand held GPS receiver.

Fishermen use them to find where they are in the ocean, and many people who do outdoor sports such as hiking use them to avoid getting lost.

How do GPS receivers work? They are connected to a network of satellites. When you turn your GPS receiver on, it looks for at least four of the GPS satellites. Radio signals are sent from the satellites to the receiver. The receiver measures the time it takes for the signals to reach it. With this information, the receiver is able to measure how far it is from the satellites.

Once the receiver knows its distance from the satellites, it is able to find its position on Earth. When its position has been calculated, it is matched to a map the receiver has in its memory. Then you can look at the map and see exactly where you are.

GPS receivers are expensive, but many people who are outdoors a lot think they are worth the money.







- **Would you find a GPS receiver useful? Think of people other than those in the text who might use GPS receivers.**

A page 131 **Answer these questions about the newspaper article on Student's Book page 86.**

الأسئلة تحريري ضمن القطع

1 **What word shows that Paul did not think it would snow?** اية كلمة تظهر ان بول لم يعتقد انها ستثلج؟

unexpected لم يتوقع

2 **Why did he not think it would snow?** لماذا لم يعتقد أنها ستثلج؟

Because it was autumn, not winter. لأنه كان خريفًا وليس شتاءًا.

3 **How do you know that he had done a lot of hiking?** كيف تعرف أنه قام بالكثير من التنزه؟

He was experienced. كان من ذوي الخبرة.

4 **Find phrases that mean the following:** ابحث عن عبارات تعني ما يلي:

a) he slipped and fell. lost his footing انزلق وسقط؛ فقد موطئ قدمه

b) going faster. gathering speed يقع بشكل أسرع؛ يزداد سرعة

c) stopped his slide broke his fall أوقف انزلاقهُ؛ أوقف سقوطه

5 **Which do you think was more useful to Paul his mobile phone or his GPS receiver? Why?**

معروف عبد الغني الرصافي

His GPS receiver because the police wouldn't be able to find where he was without it.

معروف عبد الغني الرصافي

B page 131 **The day after his accident, a reporter asked Paul about how he felt. Look at the reporter's notes. Write four sentences reporting what Paul said.**

تمرين مهم

- *leg in plaster cast, but feels fine*
- *thinks mountain-rescue team were fantastic*
- *can't wait to go home*
- *May come back to Scotland, but in the spring*

1. Paul said his leg was in a plaster cast and he felt much better.
2. He said he thought the mountain-rescue team were fantastic.
3. He said he couldn't wait to go home.
4. He said he might come back to Scotland, but in the spring.

C page 132 Answer these questions about the article on Student's Book page 87.

الأسئلة مطلوبة تحريري ضمن قطع الكتاب

1 Who uses hand-held GPS receivers? من يستخدم مستقبلات GPS المحمولة؟

Fishermen and people who do outdoor sports. الصيادون والأشخاص الذين يمارسون الرياضة في الهواء الطلق.

2 What sends radio signals to a GPS receiver? ما الذي يرسل إشارات الراديو إلى جهاز استقبال GPS؟

Satellites. الأقمار الصناعية.

3 What does a GPS receiver have in its memory? ماذا يوجد في جهاز استقبال GPS في ذاكرته؟

Maps. خرائط.

D page 132 Rewrite these active sentences in the passive. أعد كتابة هذه الجمل النشطة في المبني للمجهول

الخطوات سهلة جداً.
1. جد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول به
2. ميز زمن الجملة لتقوم بمراعاة التحويل حسب الزمن
3. ضع المفعول به في بداية الجملة
4. استخدم مساعد مناسب حسب الزمن مضارع = am/is/are ماضي = was/were ....الخ
5. نزل الفعل تصريف ثالث بعد المساعد مباشرة (ما عدا انتبه أن can وwill أفعال ناقصة تأتي بعدهم be قبل التصريف الثالث.
6. اذا اردت ذكر فاعل الجملة المبني للمعلوم او كان مهما ذكره استخدم قبله by.

1 People sell a lot of mobile phones to teenagers.
A lot of mobile phones are sold to teenagers.

2 Somebody wrote this song in 2001.
This song was written in 2001.

3 Rescuers have found the missing boy.
The missing boy has been found by rescuers.

4 People are using satellites to take pictures of the Earth.
Satellites are being used to cake pictures of the Earth.

5 The headmaster will present the cup to the winner of the tennis final this evening.
The cup will be presented to the winner of the tennis final by the headmaster this evening.

Note: by the headmaster can be in these positions:

The cup will be presented by the headmaster to the winner of the tennis final this evening.
The cup will be presented to the winner of the tennis final chis evening by the headmaster.

❖ الواجب البيتي صحيفة (133) مهم جدا تحريري

Imagine your friend is going hiking. Use these notes to give him good advice.
Use ought to, should and could. تخيل أن صديقك يتنزه. استخدم هذه الملاحظات لإعطائه نصيحة جيدة

Note(ملاحظة): should can be used in all the sentences. يمكن استخدام يجب في جميع الجمل

Example: bring food and water
You Should bring food and water.

1 check weather forecast
You ought to check the weather forecast.

2 buy GPS receiver
You could buy a GPS receiver.

3 not go without mobile phone
You shouldn't go without your mobile phone.

4 tell someone where/ go
You should tell someone where you are going.

5 wear warm clothes
You should wear warm clothes.

Keeping fit in space – page 88 / 89 – الحفاظ على الرشاقة في الفضاء

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
gravity	جاذبية	resistance	مقاومة	earplugs	سدادات الأذن
astronaut	رائد فضاء	fitness	لياقة بدنية	guest	زائر / نزيل / ضيف
keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته	spaceship	سفينة فضائية	of course	بالطبع/ بكل تأكيد
muscles	عضلات	legs	أرجل / سيقان	bones	عظام
neck	رقبة	stairs	درج	As a result	ونتيجة لذلك
arms	أدرع	easily	بسهولة	weak	ضعيف

- **What problems do you think astronauts have staying fit in space? How do they stay healthy?**
- **Read the interview and check your ideas. Then do Exercises B to Din the Activity Book.**



We all know that fitness is important. It's more important for some jobs than for others, and in some jobs it's a real challenge to keep tit. Our guest on today's programme is an astronaut. He's going to tell us what astronauts do to keep fit.
First of all, could you tell us why it's important for an astronaut to keep fit?

Yes, of course. Actually, when we're in space, we don't need to be as strong and fit as when we're on Earth.

Why is

Because in space, there's no gravity, so moving takes very little effort. But we have to keep fit so that we're ready for emergencies, especially when the spaceship is returning to Earth. And of course, we need to stay fit for when we're back on Earth. Although we don't need to be strong in space, we always need to be healthy.

Why is that?

It is, but it can be dangerous too. When we don't experience gravity, we don't need to use many of the muscles we use every day on Earth just to stand up and walk. When they're not used, the muscles of our legs, back and neck get smaller and weaker. Astronauts can lose up to 20% of their strength on a mission in space. This becomes a problem when we return to Earth. Another problem is with our bones. On Earth, activities like walking, running and climbing stairs help keep our bones healthy. But because there's no gravity in space, our bones can get weaker through lack of exercise. As a result, we can break our arms or legs more easily, and 1ttakes longer for us to get better.



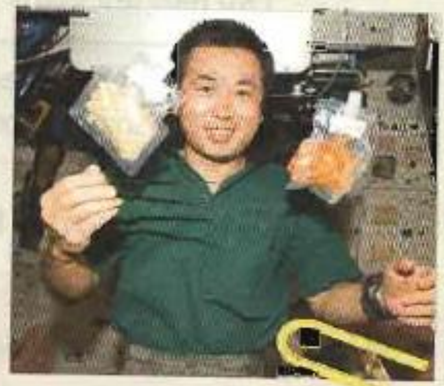
Using a rowing machine



Monitored on a treadmill

We all know that fitness is important. It's more important

Yes, we prevent this with exercise and a healthy diet. Astronauts on the International Space Station spend two and a half hours exercising every day. Since there's no gravity, we can't do many of the exercises we do on Earth, like lifting weights. And there's no place to walk or run. So, we use special machines that use resistance to exercise our muscles.



Eating in space

What about your diet?

We need to eat foods that contain a lot of calcium to keep our bones healthy and strong. And we make sure we eat a balanced diet that gives us all the vitamins we need.

Does it taste terrible?

In the past it did. Now we have a variety of foods to choose from, even some sweets. The food has to be carefully prepared to stay good for a long time. Water is taken out of foods like soups, and oxygen is taken out of the packages. Most of all, the food has to be something that can be eaten in an environment without gravity. Salt and pepper are in a liquid form. If they were powder, they would f ly around and get in our eyes, or damage our equipment.



An astronaut's meal pack

Do you have any other health or fitness problems in space?

Yes, a lot of astronauts have trouble sleeping. Most people sleep when it's dark and wake up when it's light. But days and nights in space are not the same as on Earth. We sometimes have to sleep close to other people and they can be noisy. Some of them snore! But sleep is very important for people to be able to work and think clearly. That's why many astronauts wear a mask over their eyes to protect then, from the light, and earplugs lo shut out the noise around them.



Fast asleep!

It sounds as if it isn't easy to stay healthy in space.

No, but it's important. Scientists and nutritionists are always studying the best ways to keep us fit. And what they learn helps all people, not just astronauts, because the more we learn about our bodies, the more we know about how to keep fit.

A page 133 **Complete the sentences with words from the box.**

تمرين مهم ضمن الاسقاطات (الاسقاطات لها فرع خاص ضمن ال vocabulary)

Vitamin فيتامين	diet (حمية) نظام غذائي	calcium كالسيوم	keep fit حافظ على لياقتك
muscles عضلات	bones عظام		

1 Exercise helps you keep fit and stay healthy.
2 It is important to have a diet that includes a lot of different foods.
3 There are a lot of bones in your hands and feet.
4 The muscles in your body are what make you able to move.
5 Dairy foods contain a lot of calcium
6 Some people believe that vitamin C can help you get better faster when you are ill.

B page 134 **Read the interview on Student's Book pages 88 and 89.**
Tick the main points the astronaut makes.

1 Astronauts don't need to be very strong in space, but they need to stay fit for when they get back to Earth. ✓
2 Astronauts never have emergencies. ☐
3 Being in an environment without gravity can be bad for your muscles and bones. ✓
4 Exercise and diet can help astronauts stay healthy. ✓
5 Food tastes better in space than on Earth. ☐
6 Astronauts spend 20% of their time sleeping. ☐
7 Sometimes it is hard to get enough sleep when you are in space. ✓

C page 134 **Now complete these details supporting each main point.**

1 Astronauts don't need to be very strong in space, ...
No gravity in space, so it is easy to move and the muscles don't get any exercise.

2 Being in an environment without gravity,
Can lose up to 20% of their strength. Bones get weaker and can break.

3 Exercise and diet ...
Use special machines to exercise muscles. Eat food with calcium for bones and a balanced diet to give them necessary vitamins.

4 Sometimes it's hard ... Because of the light and noise caused by other people. They use masks and earplugs.

D page 135 **Use your notes to write a summary of the interview. Write about 60 more words.**
When you have finished, exchange books with a partner and check each other's work.

Astronauts don't need to be very strong in space because it is easy to move around since there is no gravity. However, they need to stay fit for when they get back to Earth. This environment can be bad for the muscles and bones, so the astronauts have to exercise and have a healthy diet. They use special machines to exercise. They eat food with lots of calcium and vitamins. To help them sleep, they wear eye masks to keep out the light and earplugs to shut out the noise.

لا يحتاج رواد الفضاء إلى أن يكونوا أقوياء جدًا في الفضاء لأنه من السهل التنقل نظرًا لعدم وجود جاذبية. ومع ذلك، فهم بحاجة إلى الحفاظ على لياقتهم عند عودتهم إلى الأرض. يمكن أن تكون هذه البيئة ضارة للعضلات والعظام، لذلك يتعين على رواد الفضاء ممارسة الرياضة واتباع نظام غذائي صحي. يستخدمون آلات خاصة لممارسة الرياضة. يأكلون طعامًا غنيًا بالكالسيوم والفيتامينات. لمساعدتهم على النوم، يرتدون أقنعة العين لحجب الضوء وسدادات الأذن لعدم سماع الضوضاء.

❖ الوجب البيتي صحيفة (135)

Find a new compound word in the text. Then complete these compound words from Units 5 to 7 and write a sentence with one of the words.

مهم جدا ضمن الاملاء

❖ Homework الواجب البيتي

find a compound word in the SB text (earplugs), ابحث عن كلمة مركبة في نص SB (سدادات الأذن)،
then complete the other compound words and write a sentence with one (or all) of them.
ثم أكمل الكلمات المركبة الأخرى واكتب جملة واحدة (أو جميعها).

earplugs	سدادات الأذن	**headache**	وجع راس	**toothbrush**	فرشاة الأسنان
toothpaste	معجون الأسنان	**cough syrup / cough lozenge**	شراب السعال / مستحلب السعال	**seatbelt**	حزام الأمان
mouth guard	حامي الفم/ واقي الاسنان	**knee pad**	واقي الركبة	**vitamin pill**	حبة فيتامين
radar map	خريطة رادارية	**test tube**	أنبوب اختبار		

What's the job for you? – page 90 – ما هو العمل المناسب لك؟

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
dentist	دكتورالاسنان	aerospace engineer / ˈeərəspeɪs/	مهندس طيران	forester	حارس الغابة
teacher	معلم	chemist	كيميائي	marine biologist	عالم احياء بحرية
geologist	جيولوجي	meteorologist / ˌmiːtɪəˈrɒlədʒɪst/	عالم أرصاد الجوية	important	مهم
physics	physics	environment /ɪnˈvaɪrənm(ə)nt/	بيئة	solve	يحل

- **Match a job from the box with the interests in the column on the left. Two jobs are extra.**

dentist	teacher	meteorologist	aerospace engineer
chemist	forester	marine biologist	geologist

- **Use this magazine test to find out what job would suit you.**

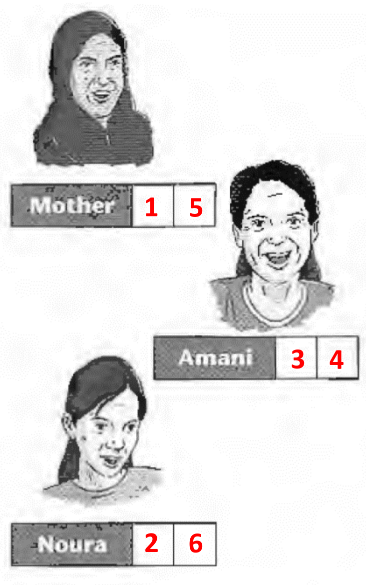
Are you wondering what's the right job for you? Here are some jobs you may not have thought of. Find your interests on the left and match them with a job on the right.

If ...	you might like to be a/an ...
you like travelling, you are interested in sea creatures, you are good at science,	marine biologist
you are interested in teeth, you like making people feel better, you know how to make people relax,	dentist
you are good at physics, you are interested in space, you want to work with new technologies,	aerospace engineer
you enjoy working outdoors, you care about the environment, you think trees are important	forester
you. wonder What causes wind and rain, you want to help people, you always check the weather forecast,	meteorologist
you like helping solve people's problems, you are interested in health and medicines, you like talking to people.	chemist

A page 135 82 صوت **Listen to the conversation and note which jobs the speakers mention.**

<u>marine biologist</u>, <u>pilot</u>, <u>dentist</u>, <u>doctor</u>, <u>foreseer</u>

B page 136 83 صوت **Listen again and match the speakers and the sentences. Write the numbers.**



1. You have to be good at science for many of the jobs.
2. I want a job that will let me travel.
3. I want to help people.
4. Working alone isn't much fun.
5. Money isn't everything. It's important to have a job you enjoy.
6. Working in the same place every day sounds boring.

C page **Work in groups. Look back at the speakers' ideas in Exercise B. Tell your partners which ideas you agree with and why.**

- **discuss the opinions of the speakers in Exercise B in small groups.**
- **tell your partner which of the jobs mentioned they would like best and why.**
- **If you don't want to be a (dentist), what do you want to be?**

❖ الواجب البيتي صحيفة (136)
❖ أنشاء الوحدة الثامنة

Write a paragraph of up to 100 words about the job you would like to do when you finish studying.

اكتب فقرة تصل إلى 100 كلمة حول الوظيفة التي ترغب في القيام بها عند الانتهاء من الدراسة.

Write about the job you would like to do when you finish studying.

My dream is to become a doctor. I have some reasons to become one. First of all, I want to save lives. I had a little brother whom I loved so much but he died because there were no doctors in my village. My second reason is that like to help the poor. I want to treat poor people for free Because I am poor as well and I can understand how much hard it is to have no money to get cured or even buy cure. I promise myself to be there for those who will need my help.

حلمي هو أن أصبح طبيباً. لدي بعض الأسباب لأكون واحداً. قبل كل شيء، أريد أن أنقذ الأرواح. كان لي أخ صغير أحببته كثيرًا لكنه مات لأنه لم يكن هناك أطباء في قريتي. سببي الثاني هو أنني أحب مساعدة الفقراء. أريد أن أعالج الفقراء بالمجان. لأنني فقير أيضًا ويمكنني أن أفهم مدى صعوبة ألا تملك المال للشفاء أو حتى شراء العلاج. أعد نفسي أن أكون هناك لأولئك الذين سيحتاجون إلى مساعدتي.

A page 137 Write the words in the box under the correct headings.

as a result نتيجة لذلك a little later بعد قليل however ومع ذلك because بسبب but لكن
once حالما/ما إن while بينما when عندما although برغم من after that بعد ذلك

To show when something happened لأظهر متى حدث شيء ما	To show cause and effect لإظهار السبب والنتيجة	To contrast two ideas لإظهار الفرق بين فكرتين
while a little later once when after that	as a result because	however but although

B page 137 Read and complete this paragraph with words from Exercise A.

complete the paragraph with words from the table.

The first time I went rollerblading was with my cousin Mahmoud. Mahmoud was pretty good although he had never done it before. I tried my best, but I kept bumping into people because I didn't know how to stop. Finally, a nice man showed me how to do it After that I didn't fall quite as much, but I still fell.

C page 137 Read the next paragraph of the story and the questions. Why are they difficult to answer?

Why are they difficult to answer? لماذا يصعب الإجابة عليها؟
a lack of punctuation makes it hard to understand what the boy is wearing;
it is not clear what the pronoun they refers to in line three; the lack of punctuation in line four makes it confusing.

عدم وجود علامات الترقيم يجعل من الصعب فهم ما يرتديه الصبي؛
ليس من الواضح ما هو الضمير الذي يشيرون إليه في السطر الثالث؛ عدم وجود علامات الترقيم في السطر الرابع يجعل الأمر مربكًا.

I was not enjoying myself I was wearing new rollerblades a helmet knee pads and wrist guards. But I still got hurt every time I fell. I realized my helmet and knee pads were too big and my rollerblades متزلج were too small. They kept falling off. I couldn't see because my helmet covered my eyes. And my feet hurt after half an hour I told Mahmoud I had to get new equipment. When everything was the right size; it was much easier.

I was not enjoying myself. (Full stop) I was wearing new rollerblades, a helmet, knee pads and wrist guards, but I still got hurt every time I fell. (Commas in a list and before but) I realized my helmet and knee pads were too big and my rollerblades were too small. My knee pads kept falling off, (need to repeat the subject to avoid confusion) I couldn't see because my helmet covered my eyes and my feet hurt. (Better to make these three into one sentence; shouldn't begin written sentences with and; full stop after hurt) After half an hour, I told Mahmoud I had to get new equipment. (Comma after time phrase) When everything was the right size, it was much easier.

1 How many things was the writer wearing?
4
2 What kept falling off?
My knee pads
3 What happened after half an hour?
I told Mahmoud I had to get new equipment

Write the paragraph so that it is easier to read.

I was not enjoying myself. I was wearing new rollerblades, a helmet, knee pads and wrist guards, but I still got hurt every time I fell. I realized my helmet and knee pads were too big and my rollerblades were too small. My knee pads kept falling off, I couldn't see because my helmet covered my eyes, and my feet hurt. After half an hour, I told Mahmoud I had to get new equipment. When everything was the right size; it was much easier.

D page 138 **Number these writing steps in the correct order.**

- 5 Read it to make sure it is clear. Make it clearer if you need to.
- 3 Organize your notes so that similar ideas go together.
- 6 Proofread for punctuation, spelling and grammar.
- 2 Write your ideas in note form.
- 4 Write the story.
- 1 Choose the topic you like best (if there is a choice).

E page 138 **Write a story about the first time you did something. Follow the steps in Exercise D. Use your notebook.**

Things you can write about

The first time they tried a new sport, used a new piece of equipment, or met someone special.

- write three paragraphs, following the steps in Exercise D.
- this is the end-of-unit writing task.
- write 80-120 words.
- follow the Checklist for written work. (SB p.114)

Write a story about the first time you did something

اكتب قصة عن المرة الأولى التي فعلت فيها شيئًا ما



The first time I tried the a roller-coaster, I was scared to death but the others were so excited. I couldn't believe that I was going to try it. When the roller coaster started to accelerate, I thought I was going to die. It was so fast.

I encouraged myself, yet I was so afraid that something might go wrong. Once the roller coaster reached the spiral part of the track. I lost control of myself and started screaming 'we are going to die!', 'we're going to die!'. Although, I was screaming for real, some thought I was just kidding and were just laughing at me.



When the roller coaster stopped, I couldn't believe that I made it alive. I got off the roller coaster shouting 'I'm alive!', 'I'm alive'. people around were laughing loudly because of my actions. As a result, I think I will never try the roller coaster again, never ever again.

في المرة الأولى التي جربت فيها ركوب قطار الملاهي كنت خائفاً حتى جداً ولكن الآخرين كانوا متحمسين للغاية. لم أصدق أنني سأحاول ذلك. عندما بدأ قطار الملاهي في التسارع، ظننت أنني سأموت. كان سريعاً جدا.ً

شجعت نفسي، لكنني كنت خائفًا جدًا من حدوث خطأ ما. بمجرد وصول قطار الملاهي إلى الجزء الحلزوني من المسار. فقدت السيطرة على نفسي وبدأت في الصراخ "سنموت!"، "سنموت!". على الرغم من أنني كنت أصرخ بشكل حقيقي، إلا أن البعض اعتقد أنني كنت أمزح فقط وكانوا يضحكون علي.

عندما توقف قطار الملاهي، لم أصدق أنني خرجت حياً. نزلت منها وأنا أصرخ "أنا على قيد الحياة!"، "أنا على قيد الحياة". كان الناس يضحكون بصوت عالٍ بسبب أفعالي. نتيجة لذلك، أعتقد أنني لن أحاول ركوب قطار الموت مرة أخرى أبدًا.

Would you like to go out? – page 91 – هل ترغب في الخروج؟

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
match	مباراة	Physics	الفيزياء	beach	شاطئ بحر
tomorrow morning	غدا صباحا	grandparents	الجد والجدة	comedy showing	عرض الكوميديا
incredibly funny	مضحك بشكل لا يصدق	sounds great	يبدو عظيما	library /ˈlaɪbrərɪ/	مكتبة

Activity book – page 139

A page 139 85 صوت **Listen to the conversations again and answer the questions. Then check your answers on Student's Book page 91.**

Conversation 1

1 Why wasn't Rashid at the match last week?
Because he was studying for his Physics exam.
2 Why can't Rashid go to the beach today?
He has to go to the demist.
3 When is Yousif picking Rashid up?
Tomorrow morning.

Conversation 2

1 Why can't Kamal go to the beach tomorrow?
He will be visiting his grandparents all day.
2 What type of film are Yousif and Kamal going to see?
A comedy.
3 Why doesn't Yousif accept Kamal's offer to pick him up?
He might go to the library first.

B page 140 Write **a conversation about one of these pictures. Use your notebook.**
اكتب محادثة حول إحدى هذه الصور. استخدم دفتر الملاحظات الخاص بك.





- two rickets for a football match in the second picture and a calendar showing a birthday party in the other
- work in groups of three and choose one of these pictures to write two conversations similar to those on SB91
- You can use their own names, but they should decide who is taking the parts of each of the three people in the primed conversations.

So, 'Yousif' is the one who gives the invitation in both conversations. All three students should participate in the writing, making suggestions and correcting as they go along. They all need to write. Circulate and monitor the writing.

C page 140 Practise the conversation with your partners. Try reading it once, then act it out without reading it.

Activity book – page 140

الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها	الكلمة	معناها
spacesuit	بدلة الفضاء	space station	محطة فضاء	inside	داخل
details /ˈdiːteɪlz/	تفاصيل	clean	ينظف	outside	في الخارج
toothpaste	معجون الأسنان	paper	ورق	hang up	ينهي المحادثة على الهاتف
package	الطرد	X-rays	الأشعة السينية	party	حفلة

صوت 87/86

A page 140 صوت 86 **Listen to an astronaut describing some of the problems of being in space. Tick the two main points in the talk.**

1 Astronauts have to wear spacesuits outside the space station. ✓
2 Astronauts have to wear spacesuits inside the space station. ☐
3 Astronauts don't brush their teeth on a space station. ☐
4 Washing is difficult because water doesn't run downwards in space. ✓

B page 140 صوت 87 **Listen again and complete these details.**

1 Equipment in a spacesuit:

a) a temperature control because it can be very hot or cold outside the space station
b) oxygen to allow the astronauts to breathe
c) a microphone and a headphone to allow astronauts to talk to each other

2 Astronauts use (special) shampoo that doesn't have to be washed out of their hair.
3 They can brush their teeth, but they have to clean the toothpaste off with a towel

C page 141 **Read the conversation between Mona and Noor.**





Noor: Hi Mona. How are you?

Mona: Fine. I'm at the Best Buy computer shop with my mother.

Noor: What are you doing there?

Mona: We have to buy a computer for my brother Sami.

Noor: Can you buy me some computer paper?

Mona: Yes, I can. Sorry, I have to hang up because my mother is in a hurry.

Now complete what Noor says when she reports her conversation with Mona.



I asked Mona how she was. She said she was fine.
She said she was at the Best Buy computer
shop with her mother. I asked her what they were
doing there. She told me they had to buy a computer
for her brother Sami. I asked her
if she could buy me some computer paper.
She said she could. Then she said she had to hang
up because her mother was in a hurry مستعجلة.

D page 142 Write these sentences again in the passive. اكتب هذه الجمل مرة أخرى في المبني للمجهول

تمرين مهم جداً

1 They write the newspaper in English and Arabic.
The newspaper is written in English and Arabic.

2 We will send the package directly to your house.
The package will be sent directly to your house.

3 Somebody stole my digital camera.
My digital camera has been stolen. (by someone).

(the passive structure is preferred because we don't know who performed the action.)(indefinite pronoun somebody)

4 The ambulance is taking the woman to hospital for X-rays.
The woman is being taken to hospital for X-rays by the ambulance.

5 Someone baked the cakes the day before the party.
The cakes were baked the day before the party.

E page 142 Complete these exchanges. Use your own ideas to make offers, invitations and responses.

تمرين مهم جداً

1 A: I'm hot.

B: Shall I get you a glass of water? or

Shall I turn up the air-conditioning?

2 A: I don't understand the homework.

B: I'll help you. /Shall I help you?

3 A: Would you like to come to the museum with us?

B: I'd love to. Thank you for inviting me.

4 A: Would you like some tea?

B: No, thanks. I have to go. I'm in a hurry.

5 A: Shall I show you around the school?

B: Thanks, that would be nice. Or No thanks. I don't have time.

6 A: I'll pick you up at six. Or I'll send you a postcard from Lebanon.

B: Great!

7 A: Do you want to play football with us this afternoon?

B: Sorry, I'm afraid I can't. I have to look after my little sister.

F page 143 **Complete the sentences with words from the box.**

تمرين مهم جداً

a little later بعد قليل	as a result نتيجة ل	because بسبب	but لكن
although بالرغم من	once حالما / ما إن	while بينما	however ومع ذلك

1 **Meera studied hard for her exam. As a result, she got a good mark.**
2 **Jameel lay down on his bed to read. A little later, he turned off the light and went to sleep.**
3 **Although she had a fever, Salwa decided to go to school.**
4 **It started to rain while we were walking home.**
5 **Once he had read the instructions; he knew what to do.**
6 **I'd love to come with you. However, I've got to stay home and help my father.**
7 **I like this computer because it's got a lot of memory.**
8 **Dana has a digital camera, but her sister doesn't.**

THE WAY TEACHING IS MEANT TO BE

FADHIL ALQASSAP

الادب رابع اعدادي

الكورس الأول والثاني

الأستاذ: فاضل سالم القصاب

Literature Focus تركيز الأدب

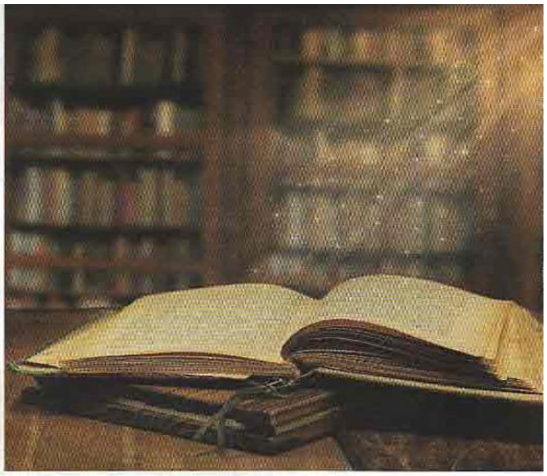
Literature Focus

لماذا قراءة الأدب؟

Why read literature?

1 Before you read, try to answer the question. Do you read literature? Why/Why not?

2 Read the following well-known quotations carefully.



① **F. Scott Fitzgerald**
'That is part of the beauty of all literature. You discover that your *longings** are universal longings, that you're not lonely and *isolated** from anyone. You belong.'

سكوت فيتزجيرالد
"هذا جزء من جمال كل الأدب. تكتشف أن أشواقك (أمنياتك) * هي أمنيات كلية(شاملة)، وأنك لست وحيدًا ومعزولًا * عن أي شخص تنتمي اليه.

② **Maya Angelou**
'When I look back, I am so impressed again with the life-giving power of literature. If I were a young person today, trying to gain a sense of myself in the world, I would do that again by reading, just as I did when I was young.'

مايا أنجيلو
عندما أنظر إلى الوراء، أنا مُتأثرة مرة أخرى بقوة الأدب الواهبة للحياة.. لو كنت شابّة اليوم، أحاول اكتساب الإحساس بنفسي في العالم ، لكُنتُ سأفعل ذلك مرة أخرى من خلال القراءة ، تمامًا كما فعلت عندما كنت صغيرًا.

③ **Roald Dahl, in *Matilda***
'The books transported her into new worlds and introduced her to amazing people who lived exciting lives. She went on *olden-day** sailing ships with Joseph Conrad. She went to Africa with Ernest Hemingway and to India with Rudyard Kipling. She travelled all over the world while still sitting in her little room in an English village.'

رولد دال، في ماتيلدا
نقلتها الكتب إلى عوالم جديدة وعرفتها لأناس رائعين عاشوا حياة حماسية(مثيرة). ذهبت في سفن الإبحار الأيام القديمة مع جوزيف كونراد. ذهبت إلى إفريقيا مع إرنست همنغواي وإلى الهند مع روديارد كيبلينج. سافرت في جميع أنحاء العالم بينما كانت لا تزال تجلس في غرفتها الصغيرة في قريةٍ إنجليزية.

④ **Carl Sagan, in *Cosmos***
'[When you read ...] you're inside the mind of another person, maybe somebody dead for thousands of years. Across the *millennia**, an author is speaking clearly and silently inside your head, directly to you.'

كارل ساجان، في كوزموس (الكون)
"[عندما تقرأ ...] أنت داخل عقل شخص آخر، ربما شخص مات منذ آلاف السنين. عبر آلاف السنين * ، يتحدث مؤلف بوضوح وصمت داخل رأسك ، مباشرة إليك.

⑤ **C. S. Lewis**
'Literature adds to reality, it does not simply describe it.'

سي. إس. لويس
"الأدب يضيف إلى الواقع، لا يصفه ببساطة".

⑥ **Laurie Anderson**
'Literature is the safe and traditional *vehicle** through which we learn about the world and pass on values from one *generation** to the next.'

لوري أندرسون
"الأدب هو الوسيلة الآمنة والتقليدية * التي نتعرف من خلالها على العالم وننقل القيم من جيل * إلى جيل".

⑦ **John Keats**
'A thing of beauty is a joy forever.'

جون كيتس
'شيء من الجمال هو متعة إلى الأبد.'

Use the Glossary to help you understand some words in quotations 1-7 and in statements a)-e).
أستخدم المسرد لمساعدتك على فهم بعض الكلمات الموجودة في الاقتباسات من 1 إلى 7 وفي البيانات a - e

الكلمة	معناها	المعنى في الانكليزي	ترجمة
longings	أمنيات(اشواق)	strong feelings of wanting something; hopes	مشاعر قوية بالرغبة في شيء ما؛ آمال
isolated	منعزل	on your own; far away from other people	لوحدك؛ بعيدًا عن الآخرين
olden-day	قديم	from a time in the past	من وقت في الماضي
millennia	آلفية	thousands of years	آلاف السنين
vehicle	وسيلة (طريقة)	way, means of passing something on	وسيلة لتمرير شيء ما
generation	جيل	stage in a family, e.g., from when children are born until they become adults	مرحلة في الأسرة، على سبيل المثال، منذ ولادة الأطفال حتى يصبحوا بالغين
empathize	يتعاطف	understand another person 's thoughts, feelings, experiences	فهم أفكار ومشاعر وتجارب شخص آخر
perspective	منظور	way of thinking about something	طريقة للتفكير في شيء ما
look beyond	ينظر إلى أبعد من	see further than	ينظر أبعد من
limitations	محددات (قيود)	limits, restrictions	حدود، قيود
transform	يتحول	totally change	تغير تماما

3 Read the statements below and try to match each quotation with one or more statements.

a) There is new evidence that people who read fiction and poetry are better at understanding other people. They find it easier to *empathize** with other people and view the world from their *perspective**.

b) Some people believe that reading literature makes us cleverer. It gives us knowledge, but it also makes us think more deeply.

c) Reading poems, novels and short stories takes us out of ourselves. It makes us *look beyond** the *limitations** of our gender, age, nationality, religion, social status, etc. We see through other eyes.

d) Literature can change the way we think about life. It can *transform** our attitudes and expectations.

e) Reading literature brings us pleasure, even joy.

a) هناك دليل جديد على أن الأشخاص الذين يقرؤون الروايات والشعر أفضل في فهم الآخرين. يجدون أنه من السهل التعاطف * مع الآخرين ومشاهدة العالم من وجهة نظرهم (منظورهم).*

b) يعتقد بعض الناس أن قراءة الأدب تجعلنا أكثر ذكاءً، فهو يمنحنا المعرفة، ولكنه أيضًا يجعلنا نفكر بعمق أكبر.

c) قراءة القصائد والروايات والقصص القصيرة تخرجنا من أنفسنا. يجعلنا ننظر إلى ما وراء * القيود *. من جنسنا وعمرنا وجنسيتنا وديننا ومكانتنا الاجتماعية، وما إلى ذلك، نرى من خلال عيون أخرى

d) يمكن للأدب أن يغير طريقة تفكيرنا في الحياة. يمكن أن يحول * مواقفنا وتوقعاتنا

e) قراءة الأدب تجلب لنا السرور، بل والفرح.

Questions about "Why read literature": أسئلة عن "لماذا نقرأ الأدب"

True / False

1. reading literature brings us pleasure, even joy. (True / false)
2. reading literature doesn't bring us pleasure. (True / false)
3. some people believe that reading literature makes us clever. (True / false)
4. literature can change the way we think about life. (True / false)
5. literature can't change the way we think about life. (True / false)

Match

Match words in list A with their meanings in list B

1. Longings	F	a.	understand another person 's thoughts, feelings, experiences
2. isolated	C	b.	thousands of years
3. millennia	b	c.	on your own; far away from other people
4. look beyond	e	d.	limits, restrictions
5. empathize	a	e.	see further than
6. limitations	d	f.	strong feelings of wanting something; hopes

choose

1. "You discover that your longings are universal longings." (a. Carl Sagan, in Cosmos b. F. Scott Fitzgerald)
2. "I am so impressed again with the life-giving power of literature." (a. Maya Angelou c. Roald Dahl, in Matilda)
3. "She travelled all over the world while still sitting in her little room in an English village."
   (a. Roald Dahl, in Matilda c. C. S. Lewis)
4. "you're inside the mind of another person, maybe somebody dead for thousands of years."
   (a. F. Scott Fitzgerald c. Carl Sagan, in Cosmos)
5. "A thing of beauty is a joy forever." (a. F. Scott Fitzgerald c. John Keats)
5. 'Literature adds to reality, it does not simply describe it.' (a. C. S. Lewis c. John Keats)

Answer

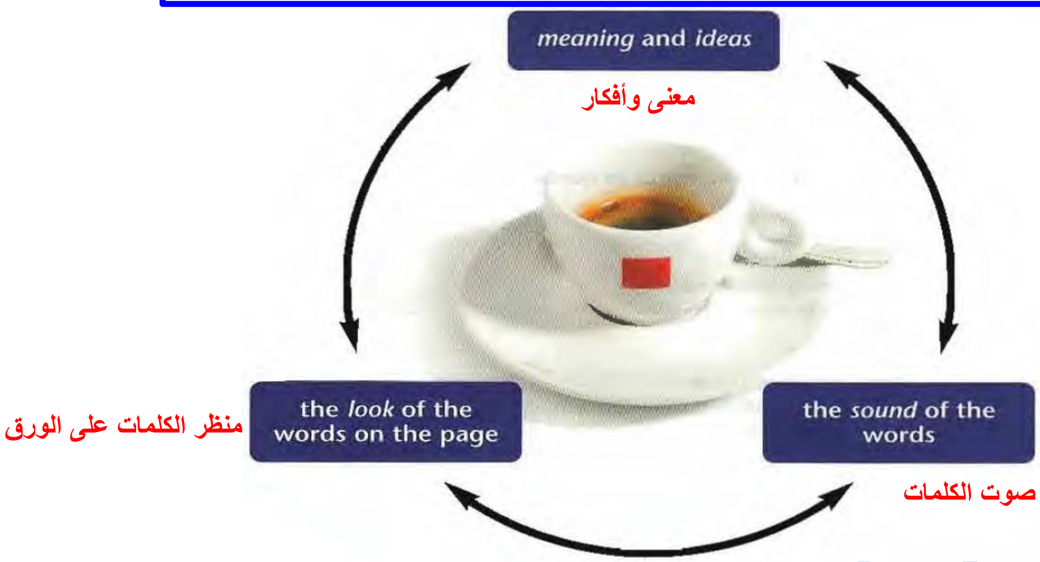
1. Why should we read literature? (give two reasons only) لماذا يجب أن نقرأ الأدب؟ (اذكر سببين فقط)
   1. People who read fiction and poetry are better at understanding other people
   2. reading literature brings us pleasure, even joy.
   3. literature can change the way we think about life.

مهمة لامتحان الشهر الأول ونهاية الكورس الاول ضمن فرع الأدب

What is poetry?

If all literature is good coffee, poetry is an espresso. What makes poetry special is its concentration. Like all forms of literature, poetry is a mixture of the three things shown below; the difference is, poetry mixes these three things very carefully in fewer words.

اذا كان كل الأدب قهوة، فالشعر إسبريسو. ما يجعل الشعر مميزاً هو تركيزهُ. مثل كل أشكال الأدب، الشعر خليط من ثلاثة أشياء ظاهرة تحت؛ الاختلاف هو أن الشعر يخلط ثلاثة أشياء بشكلٍ حَذِرٍ جداً في كلمات قليلة

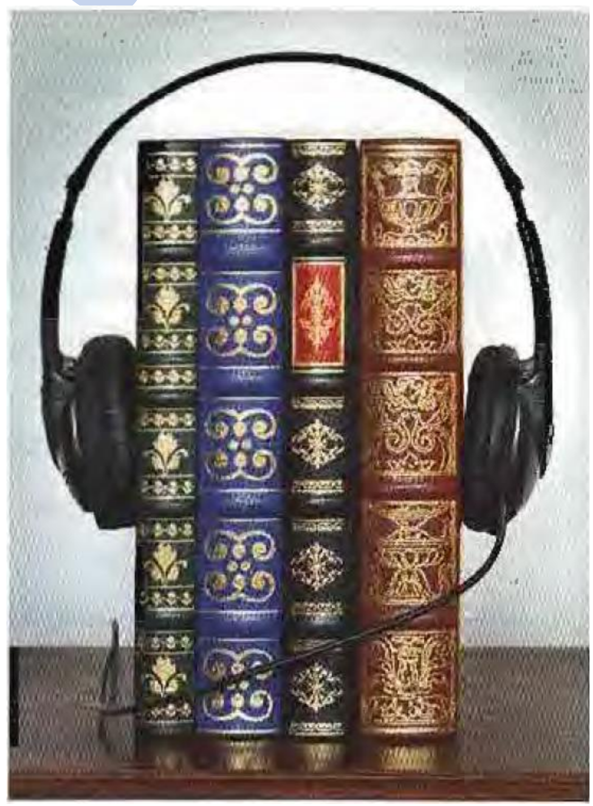


When poems are performed in front of an audience, the look of the words on the page does not matter. It is only since the invention of the printing press that this aspect of poetry has become so important. In modern poetry; however, this visual aspect is understood to be very significant.

عندما يتم ألقاء القصائد امام الجمهور، منظر الكلمات على الصفحة لا تهم. إنه فقط منذ اختراع صحافة الطبع بأن هذا الجانب من الشعر قد أصبح مهما جداً. في الشعر الحديث، على أي حال، هذا الجانب المرئي مفهوم على أنهُ مهمٌ جداً.

In both old and modern poems, heard or read, the musical quality of the words is perhaps what makes poetry so special. Like a song sung by an opera singer, a pop musician or rap artist, poems use rhythm and rhyme. Sometimes the rhythm is very strong and clear - like the beat in rap or rock music;

في كلتا القصائد القديمة والحديثة، مسموع أو مقروءة، النوعية الموسيقية للكلمات ربما هو ما يجعل الشعر خاصا جداً. مثل أغنية مغنى من قبل مغني أوبرا أو موسيقي بوب أو فنان راب، القصائد تستخدم الوزن والقافية. أحيان الوزن قوي جدا وواضح – مثل الإيقاع في موسيقى الراب أو الروك.



sometimes it flows more freely. Sometimes, too, the rhyme is obvious - each line rhymes; sometimes the lines do not rhyme, but there are rhymes to be found within individual phrases.

أحيانا تجري بشكل حر. ,أحيانا، أيضا، القافية تكون واضحة – كل سطر يتوازن؛ أحيانا ,الأسطر لا تتوازن، ولكن هنا أوزان يمكن إيجادهم داخل عبارات فردية.



Both the look and the sound of a poem affect our understanding of a poem's meaning. Sometimes a poem will express a completely original idea. More often, however, a poem will express a common idea, thought or feeling ... but in an original way.

يؤثر كل من مظهر وصوت القصيدة على فهمنا لمعنى القصيدة. في بعض الأحيان سوف تعبر القصيدة عن فكرة أصلية تمامًا. في كثير من الأحيان، ومع ذلك، في كثير من الأحيان، تعبر القصيدة عن فكرة أو فكرة أو شعور مشترك ... ولكن بطريقة أصلية.

When we analyze a poem, we can look out for a large number of ways a poet uses the visual and musical qualities of words. These are some of the most important tools of the poet:

عندما نحلل قصيدة، يمكننا البحث عن عدد كبير من الطرق التي يستخدم بها الشاعر الصفات المرئية والموسيقية للكلمات وهذه بعض من أهم أدوات الشاعر:

Literary devices صور (أدوات) أدبية

Imagery: an **image** is a picture created in the mind of the reader / listener by part of the poem.

التصور: التصورة هي صورة تم إنشاؤها في ذهن القارئ / المستمع بواسطة جزء من القصيدة.

A motif: is an **image** that is repeated throughout a poem (or novel, play, etc.)

الفكرة: هي صورة تتكرر في القصيدة (أو رواية، مسرحية، إلخ).

التالي شرح للتوضيح

Imagery draws on the five senses, namely the details of **taste**, **touch**, **sight**, **smell**, and **sound**.

تعتمد التصور على الحواس الخمس وهي تفاصيل الذوق واللمس والبصر والشم والصوت.

"التصور" لا تركز فقط على التمثيلات المرئية أو الصور الذهنية - إنها تشير إلى مجموعة كاملة من التجارب الحسية، بما في ذلك المشاعر الداخلية والأحاسيس الجسدية.

تسمح الصور للقارئ برؤية ولمس وتذوق وشم وسماع ما يحدث بوضوح - وفي بعض الحالات يتعاطف مع الشاعر أو موضوعه. الصور تزيد من جمال العمل الشعري وتكثيفه

Metaphor: a **metaphor** compares two things that are not usually thought to be the same e.g., my spirit is a bird.

الاستعارة: الاستعارة تقارن بين شيئين لا يعتقد في العادة أنهما متماثلان

A **simile**: is a type of **metaphor**, which always uses comparing words 'like' or 'as', e.g., His mind is like an open book

التشبيه: هو نوع من الاستعارة التي تستخدم دائمًا الكلمات المقارنة مثل "like" أو "as"،
على سبيل المثال، عقله مثل كتاب مفتوح

التالي للتوضيح أكثر

الاستعارة هي شكل بلاغي للكلام يقارن بين موضوعين دون استخدام "like" أو "as"

غالبًا ما يتم الخلط بين الاستعارة والتشبيه، الذي يقارن موضوعين من خلال ربطهما بـ "like" أو "as"
(على سبيل المثال: "She's fit as a fiddle" "إنها مناسبة ككمان").
بينما ينص التشبيه على أن شيئًا ما يشبه الآخر،
تؤكد الاستعارة أن شيئًا واحدًا هو الآخر، أو أنه بديل عن الشيء الآخر.

Personification: **personification** is when something is described as though it is alive, often as though it is human,
e.g., The flowers danced in th wind.

التجسيد(التشخيص): التجسيد هو عندما يوصف شيء ما كما لو كان حيًا، غالبًا كما لو كان إنسانًا،
على سبيل المثال، رقصت الأزهار في الريح.

ويمعنى أخر
إعطاء صفات بشرية لأشياء غير بشرية
كصورة بلاغية أدبية، التجسيد هو إسقاط الخصائص التي تنتمي عادةً إلى البشر فقط على الأشياء الجامدة أو الحيوانات أو قوى الطبيعة. يمكن أن تشمل هذه الخصائص أفعال الحركة الذي يقوم بها البشر فقط أو صفات تصف حالة بشرية. يمكن أن تكون الخصائص أيضًا عواطف أو مشاعر أو دوافع لأشياء غير قادرة على التفكير.
على سبيل المثال، إذا قال أحدهم، "the trees whispered their discontent," "همست الأشجار سخطها"،
فهذا من شأنه أن يجسد الأشجار على أنها قادرة على الهمس والشعور بالتعاسة. يشار أيضًا إلى التجسيد أحيانًا باسم التجسيم عندما يتم استخدامه لإعطاء مشاعر بشرية وأفعال للحيوانات.

Word-sounds: أصوات الكلمات

Alliteration: is when the same letter or sound is repeated at the beginning of, or within, several words within a phrase.

الجناس: هو عندما يتكرر نفس الحرف أو الصوت في بداية عدة كلمات أو داخل جملة ما.

We call this نسمي هذا
consonance when consonants are repeated.

التوافق عند تكرار الحروف الساكنة

Assonance when vowels are repeated

تجانس صوتي عند تكرار أحرف العلة

and **sibilance** when “s” is repeated, creating a hissing sound.

والصفير عند تكرار "s"، مما ينتج عنه صوت هسهسة.

These can be quite hard for language-learners to spot, but sometimes they are clear,
e.g., The snake slithers across the sands.

قد يكون من الصعب جدًا على متعلمي اللغة اكتشافها، ولكنها في بعض الأحيان تكون واضحة،
على سبيل المثال، ينزلق الثعبان عبر الرمال.

Poetic form: there are many types of poetic form, in which poems follow a set structure of lines, stanzas (verses) and even beats within each line, examples are the sonnet, the lyric, the epic.
Other poems are called **free verse**, because they don’t follow one of these set patterns.

الشكل الشعري: هناك أنواع عديدة من الأشكال الشعرية، حيث تتبع القصائد بنية مجموعة من الخطوط، والمقاطع (الأبيات) وحتى الإيقاعات داخل كل سطر، ومن الأمثلة: السونيتة، والقصائد الغنائية، والملحمة.

What is poetry? أسئلة ما هو الشعر؟

Complete أكمل

1. If all literature is good coffee, poetry is an…. espresso…….
2. What makes poetry special is its ……concentration……..
3. Poetry is a mixture of the three things,
they are 1….meaning and ideas…., 2. …the look of the words on the page…, 3.…the sound of the words….
3. When poems are performed in front of an audience,… the look of the words on the page ….. does not matter
4. In modern poetry; however, this visual aspect (the look of the words) is understood to be…. very significant….
5. In both old and modern poems, heard or read, the musical quality of the words is perhaps what makes poetry so special.
6. Poems use…. rhythm….. and …..rhyme……
7. Both the… look… and ….the sound…. of a poem affect our understanding of a poem's meaning

Answer أجب

1. What do poems use?
   rhythm and rhyme
2. Poetry is a mixture of the three things, what are they?
   1. meaning and ideas.
   2. the look of the words on the page.
   3. the sound of the words.
3. What are the things that affect our understanding of a poem's meaning?
   1. look
   2. the sound
4. There are some tools (literary devices) that poets use, mention three of them!

هناك بعض الأدوات (أدوات أدبية) يستخدمها الشعراء، أذكر ثلاثة منها.

   1. Imagery
   2. Metaphor
   3. Personification

The literary devices as choose الأدوات الأدبية مثل أختر

1. An image is a picture created in the mind of the reader / listener by part of the poem.
   (a. imagery   b. metaphor)
2. Is an image that is repeated throughout a poem (or novel, play, etc.)
   (a. Alliteration   b. a motif)
3. Compares two things that are not usually thought to be the same.
   (a. imagery   b. metaphor)
4. Is a type of metaphor, which always uses comparing words ‘like’ or ‘as’,
   (a. simile   b. metaphor)
5. Is when the same letter or sound is repeated at the beginning of, or within, several words within a phrase.
   (a. imagery   b. Alliteration)
6. When consonants are repeated.
   (a. consonance   b. Assonance)
7. When vowels are repeated.
   (a. consonance   b. Assonance)
8. When “s” is repeated, creating a hissing sound.
   (a. consonance   b. sibilance)
9. They don’t follow one of the set patterns.
   (a. sonnet   b. free verse)
10. is when something is described as though it is alive, often as though it is human,
   (a. Personification   b. metaphor)

مطلوب لامتحان الشهر الثاني الكورس الأول ونهاية الكورس الأول

Alfred Lord Tennyson

Extract from *The Lady of Shalott* (1832)

**On either side the river lie
Long fields of barley and of rye,
That clothe the wold and meet the sky;
And thro' the field the road runs by
To many-tower'd Camelot;
And up and down the people go,
Gazing where the lilies blow
Round an island there below,
The island of Shalott.**

على جانبي النهر تقع
حقول طويلة من الشعير والجاودار(الذرة)،
التي تغطي السهل المرتفع ويلتقي بالسماء؛
وعبر الحقل الذي يمر به الطريق
إلى كاميلوت كثيرة الأبراج؛
ويذهب الناس صعودا ونزولا،
محدقين حيث تزهر الزنابق
حول جزيرة هناك تحت،
جزيرة شالوت

**Willows whiten, aspens quiver,
Little breezes dusk and shiver
Thro' the wave that runs for ever
By the island in the river
Flowing down to Camelot.
Four gray walls, and four gray towers,
Overlook a space of flowers,
And the silent isle imbowers
The Lady of Shalott.**

يتبيض الصفصاف، وترتعش الحور الرجراج،
النسمات الصغيرة تعتم وترتجف
من خلال الموجة التي تجري إلى الأبد
من الجزيرة في النهر
تتدفق نزولا إلى كاميلوت.
أربعة جدران رمادية وأربعة أبراج رمادية،
تطل على مساحة من الزهور،
والجزيرة الصامتة تظلل
السيدة شالوت

**There she weaves by night and day
A magic web with colours gay.
She has heard a whisper say,
A curse is on her if she stay
To look down to Camelot.
She knows not what the curse may be,
And so she weaveth steadily,
And little other care hath she,
The Lady of Shalott.**

هناك تنسج ليلا ونهارا
شبكة سحرية بألوان زاهية.
لقد سمعت همساً يقول،
لعنةٌ عليها إذا بقيت
للنظر إلى أسفل إلى كاميلوت.
إنها لا تعلم ما هي اللعنة،
وهكذا نسجت بثبات
ولديها القليل من الاهتمامات الاخرى،
سيدة شالوت



Painting *The Lady of Shalott*
by John William Waterhouse

Alfred Lord Tennyson

- **One of the most famous and well-loved Victorian poets (poets writing during the long reign of Queen Victoria).**
  واحد من أشهر وأحب
  الشعراء الفيكتوريون (شعراء كانوا يكتبون في عهد الملكة فيكتوريا الطويل)
- **Born 6th August 1809, in Lincolnshire, England.**
  من مواليد السادس من أغسطس 1809 في لينكولنشاير بإنجلترا.
- **The fourth of 12 children, in an unhappy family.**
  الرابع من بين 12 طفلاً، في عائلة غير سعيدة.
- **Showed an early talent for writing; at the age of 12, wrote a 6,000-line epic poem.**
  أظهر موهبة مبكرة في الكتابة؛ في سن
  من 12، كتب قصيدة ملحمية من 6000 سطر.
- **Educated at Trinity College, Cambridge.**
  تلقى تعليمه في كلية ترينيتي، كامبريدج.
- **Famous poems include: In Memoriam, The Lady of Shalott, The Charge of the Light Brigade.**
  تشمل القصائد الشهيرة:
  تخليدا للذكرى، سيدة شالوت، هجوم لواء الخيالة الخفيف ..
- **Died in 1892 and was buried in Poets' Corner in Westminster Abbey.**
  توفي عام 1892 ودفن في ركن الشعراء في ويستمنستر أبي.



ملخص عن القصيدة

الجزء الأول:

تبدأ القصيدة بوصف نهر وطريق يمر عبر حقول طويلة من الشعير والجاودار (ذرة) قبل الوصول إلى مدينة كاميلوت. يسافر سكان المدينة على طول الطريق وينظرون نحو جزيرة تسمى شالوت، والتي تقع في أسفل النهر. تحتوي جزيرة شالوت على العديد من النباتات والزهور، بما في ذلك الزنابق والحور والصفصاف على الجزيرة، سُجنت امرأة تُعرف باسم سيدة شالوت داخل مبنى مصنوع من "أربعة جدران رمادية وأربعة أبراج رمادية."

الجزء الثاني:

سيدة شالوت تنسج نسيجًا سحريًا وملونًا. لقد سمعت صوتًا يهمس لها أن لعنة ستحل بها إذا نظرت إلى كاميلوت، وهي لا تعرف ما هي هذه اللعنة. وبالتالي، فإنها تركز فقط على نسجها، ولا ترفع عينيها أبدًا.

الكلمة	معناها	المعنى في الانكليزي	ترجمة
barley and rye	الشعير والجاودار	types of grain, similar to wheat or corn	أنواع الحبوب المشابهة للقمح أو الذرة
clothe	يلبس	dress somebody or something	يُلبس شخص ما أو شيء ما
wold	سهل مرتفع	area of high, open land	منطقة مرتفعة ومفتوحة
gazing	التحديق	looking	ينظر
blow	تزهر	old word for bloom, show flowers	كلمة قديمة للتفتح، تظهر الزهور
willows, aspens	الصفصاف والحور	types of tree common in England	أنواع الأشجار الشائعة في إنجلترا
quiver, dusk and shiver	رعشة وغسق ورجفة	shake slightly, tremble	يهز قليلا، يرتجف
isle	جزيرة	old word for island	كلمة قديمة للجزيرة
imbowers	يظلل	holds in a bower (a bower is a pretty area shaded by flowers or trees)	يحيط بمنزل(كوخ) صيفي (التعريشة جميلة منطقة مظللة بالزهور أو الأشجار)
weaves	ينسج	makes cloth, by crossing threads together	يصنع القماش، بعبور الخيوط معًا
web	شبكة	pattern, like a spider's web	نمط(نموذج)، مثل شبكة العنكبوت
gay	ملون	old word for bright, colourful	كلمة قديمة للامع، وملون (زاهي الألوان)
curse	لعنة	magic words that harm people	كلمات سحرية تؤذي الناس

Student's book page 109

الأسئلة عن القصيدة

1. Read the poem aloud. Read it to your partner. What do you notice about the rhythm – the beat of the poem? What is the effect?

1. اقرأ القصيدة بصوت عالٍ. اقرأها لشريكك. ما الذي تلاحظه في الإيقاع – إيقاع القصيدة؟ ما هو التأثير؟

I notice that Tennyson is alternating between unstressed and stressed syllables.

لقد لاحظت أن تينيسون يتناوب بين المقاطع الصوتية غير المشددة في اللفظ والمشددة.

What is the effect?ما هو التأثير؟

This can affect the flow of the lines, as two stressed or unstressed syllables in a row disrupt the expected musicality of the poem and require more attention from readers.

يمكن أن يؤثر ذلك على سلاسة الابيات(تدفق)، حيث أن مقطعين لفظيين مشددين أو غير مشددين بشكل متتالي يعطلان الموسيقى المتوقعة للقصيدة ويتطلبان مزيدًا من الاهتمام من القراء.

2. How is rhyme used in The Lady of Shalott? Use different colours to highlight the words that rhyme. Do you like the effect of this rhyme scheme (pattern)?

كيف يتم استخدام القافية في سيدة شالوت؟ استخدم ألوانًا مختلفة لإبراز الكلمات ذات القافية. هل تحب تأثير مخطط القافية هذا (النمط)؟

Rhyme: "The Lady of Shalott" follows a very strict AAAABCCCB rhyme scheme, which serves to add a lyrical feel to the poem, since rhyming words encourage natural pauses and emphasize structure. The "Camelot" and "Shalott" refrains form the B rhymes in each stanza, which adds emphasis to the repeated words and centralizes their thematic importance through repetition.

القافية: تتبع "سيدة شالوت" مخططًا صارمًا للغاية للقافية AAAABCCCB، والذي يعمل على إضافة إحساس غنائي إلى القصيدة، حيث تشجع الكلمات المُقفى على التوقف الطبيعي والتأكيد على البنية. تشكل امتدادات "كاميلوت" و "شالوت" القوافي " b " في كل مقطع شعري، مما يضيف تأكيدًا على الكلمات المكررة ويركز أهميتها الموضوعية من خلال التكرار.

On either side the river lie A
Long fields of barley and of rye, A
That clothe the wold and meet the sky; A
And through the field the road runs by A
To many-towered Camelot; B
And up and down the people go, C
Gazing where the lilies blow C
Round an island there below, C
The island of Shalott. B

3. How many images of nature can you find?كم عدد صور الطبيعة يمكنك أن تجد؟

1. The river — 1. النهر
2. Camelot (is the symbol of a fantasy world for the lady) — 2. كاميلوت (هي رمز لعالم خيالي للسيدة)
3. The Island (symbol of the lady's isolation and loneliness.) — 3. الجزيرة (رمز لعزلة السيدة ووحدتها)
4. The Lady of Shalott — 4. سيدة شالوت
5. The Magic Web — 5. الشبكة السحرية
6. and whispering of curses — 6. وهمس اللعنات

4. Try to describe the island of Shalott in your own words.

حاول أن تصف جزيرة شالوت بأسلوبك الخاص.

The island of Shalott, which is at the bottom of the river. Shalott Island contains many plants and flowers, including lilies, aspens and willows. On the island, a woman known as Our Lady of Shalott was imprisoned in a building made of "four gray walls and four gray towers".

جزيرة شالوت تقع في أسفل النهر. تحتوي جزيرة شالوت على العديد من النباتات والزهور، بما في ذلك الزنابق والحور والصفصاف على الجزيرة، سُجنت امرأة تُعرف باسم سيدة شالوت داخل مبنى مصنوع من "أربعة جدران رمادية وأربعة أبراج رمادية".

5. This is just an extract from The Lady of Shalott. Does it make you want to read the whole poem?

Yes, it does.

❖ الأسئلة عن الشاعر

About the poet himself عن الشاعر نفسه

1. Who was Alfred lord Tennyson?من كان ألفريد لورد تينيسون؟
   One of the most famous and well-loved Victorian poets. أحد أشهر الشعراء الفيكتوريين وأكثرهم شهرة

2. Who were the Victorian poets?من هم شعراء العصر الفيكتوري؟
   poets writing during the long reign of Queen Victoria. الشعراء الين كانوا يكتبون خلال العهد الفيكتوري الطويل.

3. When and where was Alfred lord Tennyson born?متى وأين ولد ألفريد لورد تينيسون؟
   6th August 1809 Lincolnshire, England. السادس من أغسطس 1809 لينكولنشاير ، إنجلترا

4. Alfred lord Tennyson was born in ………..1809
5. Alfred lord Tennyson died in …………1892

6. Alfred lord Tennyson is The fourth of 12 children, in (a. an unhappy family b. a happy family)
   ألفريد لورد تينيسون هو الرابع من بين 12 طفلاً، في (أ. أسرة غير سعيدة ب. أسرة سعيدة)
7. Were Alfred lord Tennyson's family happy?هل كانت عائلته سعيدة؟
   No, they weren't. لا، لم يكونوا كذلك

8. What did Alfred lord Tennyson write at the age of 12? ماذا كتب ألفريد لورد تينيسون في سن الثانية عشرة؟
   He wrote a 6,000-line epic poem. كتب قصيدة ملحمية من 6000 سطر

9. Where was Alfred lord Tennyson educated? أين تلقى تعليمه؟
   He was Educated at Trinity College, Cambridge. تلقى تعليمه في كلية ترينيتي، كامبريدج.

10. Name two of Alfred lord Tennyson's famous poems!
    أذكر اثنين من قصائد ألفريد لورد تينيسون الشهيرة!

    What are Alfred lord Tennyson's famous poems?
    1. In Memoriam, تخليدا للذكرى
    2. The Lady of Shalott, السيدة شالوت
    3. The Charge of the Light Brigade. هجوم لواء الخيالة الخفيف.

القصيدة مطلوبة لامتحان الشهر الثاني ونهاية الكورس الأول

W.B. Yeats

the poem, is about Maud Gunne (who Yeats' was always said to be in love with).

William Butler Yeats

When You Are Old (1892)

عندما تكون كبيرا في السن (1892)

When you are old and grey and full of sleep,
And nodding* by the fire, take down this book,
And slowly read, and dream of the soft look
Your eyes had once, and of their shadows deep;

عندما تكون كبير في السن وشايبا ومليء بالنوم،
وتهز رأسك بقرب النار، خُذ هذا الكتاب،
واقرأ ببطء، واحلم بالمظهر الناعم
التي أمتلكها عيناك في يوم من الأيام، وظلالها عميقة؛

How many loved your moments of glad grace*,
And loved your beauty with love false or true,
But one man loved the pilgrim* soul" in you,
And loved the sorrows* of your changing face;

كم الذين أحبوا لحظاتك السعيدة *،
وأحبوا جمالك بالحب الكاذب او الصادق
لكن رجل واحد أحب روح الحاج فيك،
وأحب أحزان وجهك المتغير؛

And bending down beside the glowing bars,
Murmur*, a little sadly, how Love fled*
And paced upon the mountains overhead*
And hid his face amid* a crowd of stars.

والانحناء بجانب القضبان المتوهجة،
همهمة *، بشكل حزين قليلاً، كيف هرب الحب*
وخطى فوق الجبال في السماء*
وأخفى وجهه وسط حشد من النجوم.

Alfred Lord Tennyson

- **One of the most influential poets in the English language, and probably the most famous poet (and playwright) of the 20th century.**
  من أكثر الشعراء تأثيراً في اللغة الإنجليزية، وربما أشهر شاعر (وكاتب مسرحي) القرن العشرين.
- **Born 13th June 1865, in Dublin, Ireland.**
  من مواليد 13 يونيو 1865، في دبلن، أيرلندا.
- **The son of a well-known Irish painter, John Butler Yeats.**
  أبن الرسام الأيرلندي المعروف جون بتلر بيتس.
- **Became involved in Irish politics, arguing that Irish culture should be free from English control and influence.**
  انخرط في السياسة الأيرلندية، بحجة أن الثقافة الأيرلندية يجب أن تكون خالية من سيطرة وتأثير اللغة الإنجليزية.
- **Famous poems include: 'Easter 1916', 'The Lake Isle of Innisfree', 'Sailing to Byzantium'.**
  تشمل القصائد الشهيرة: "عيد الفصح 1916"، "بحيرة جزيرة إنيسفري"، "الإبحار إلى بيزنطة".
- **Died in 1939; was buried in France (at the beginning of the Second World War) and later re-buried in his homeland, Ireland.**
  توفي عام 1939. دفن في فرنسا (في بداية الحرب العالمية الثانية) ولاحقًا أعيد دفنه في وطنه، أيرلندا.



❖ المعاني التالية ممكن ان تستخدم كتوصيل (Match)

الكلمة	معناها	المعنى في الانكليزي	ترجمة
nodding	يهز رأسه	letting your head drop down, because you are sleepy	تترك رأسك يسقط، لأنك نعسان
glad grace	سعادة	happiness and kindness	السعادة والعطف
pilgrim	حاج / مهاجر	traveller, someone looking for something	مسافر شخص يبحث عن شيء ما
soul	روح	Person's spirit, inner character	روح الشخص، الشخصية الداخلية
sorrows	احزان	sadness	حزن
glowing bars	قضبان متوهجة	hot bars of the fire	قضبان النار الساخنة
murmur	همهمة / تذمر	say very quietly	قل بهدوء شديد
fled	هرب	left quickly, ran away	هرب
paced	سار / خطا	walked up and down many times	مشى صعودا ونزولا عدة مرات
overhead	فوق الراس	above your head	فوق رأسك
amid	وسط	among, in the middle of	بين، في منتصف

❖أسئلة القصيدة مهمة جداً

1 Read the poem aloud to your partner. What do you notice about the rhyme scheme? Highlight it with different colours, if it helps.

اقرأ القصيدة بصوت عالٍ لشريكك. ماذا تلاحظ في مخطط القافية؟ قم بتمييزه بألوان مختلفة، إذا كان ذلك مفيدًا.

The rhyme scheme is very distinct and steady; the first stanza is abba; the second is cddc; the third is effe. Yeats uses this closed rhyming pattern for emphasizing the idea of each stanza.

مخطط القافية متميز وثابت للغاية؛ المقطع الأول هو abba؛ والثاني هو cddc ؛ والثالث هو effe. يستخدم ييتس نمط القافية المغلقة هذا للتأكيد على فكرة كل مقطع.

Rhyme scheme = abba cddc effe.

When You Are Old (1892)

When you are old and grey and full of sleep,
And nodding* by the fire, take down this book,
And slowly read, and dream of the soft look
Your eyes had once, and of their shadows deep;

How many loved your moments of glad grace*,
And loved your beauty with love false or true,
But one man loved the pilgrim* soul" in you,
And loved the sorrows* of your changing face;

And bending down beside the glowing bars,
Murmur*, a little sadly, how Love fled*
And paced upon the mountains overhead*
And hid his face amid* a crowd of stars.

2 Discuss what image you have of the old man. What about the woman he loved?

ناقش الصورة التي لديك عن الرجل العجوز. ماذا عن المرأة التي أحبها؟

1. But one man loved the pilgrim* soul" in you.

Yeats's here explains himself that his love was more special than the love others gave her. And that she herself with the pilgrim soul she had, was something harder to acquire a love for.

ييتس هنا يشرح نفسه أن حبه كان مميزا أكثر من الحب الذي منحه إياها الآخرون. وكونها هي نفسها مع روح الحج التي كانت لديها، كان من الصعب أن تكتسب الحب لنفسها.

1. "When you are old and grey and full of sleep"

Here we can imagine an old woman with grey hair in the future. And that the woman now is still young.

هنا يمكننا أن نتخيل امرأة عجوز بشعر رمادي في المستقبل. وأن المرأة الآن لا تزال شابة.

3 Find one example of personification.

ابحث عن مثال واحد للتجسيد.

"Murmur, a little sadly, how Love fled", as if love can move like a human and it run away.

كأن الحب يمكن أن يتحرك مثل الإنسان وهرب.

4 Which do you think is the most powerful image in the poem? Why?

أيهما تعتقد أنه أقوى صورة في القصيدة؟ لماذا؟

the image And hid his face amid* a crowd of stars. because I think Yeats here is trying to convey two images in this line.

الصورة وخبأ وجهه وسط حشد من النجوم. لأنني أعتقد أن Yeats هنا يحاول نقل صورتين في هذا السطر.

1. even though he was hiding his face in sadness, he still love her with so much commitment.
2. And he is overhead among the stars watching over her with love despite her old age.

1. على الرغم من أنه كان يخفي وجهه في الحزن ، إلا أنه لا يزال يحبها مع الكثير من الالتزام ،
2. وهو في السماء بين النجوم يراقبها حبا، رغم كبر سنها.

أسئلة عن الشاعر ييتس

1. William Butler Yeats was one of the most influential poets in the English language. (True / False)
كان ويليام بتلر ييتس أحد أكثر الشعراء تأثيراً في اللغة الإنجليزية. (خطأ صحيح)
2. William Butler Yeats wasn't one of the most influential poets in the English language. (True / False)
لم يكن ويليام بتلر ييتس من أكثر الشعراء تأثيرًا في اللغة الإنجليزية. (خطأ صحيح)
3. William Butler Yeats was one of the most …… influential poets…… in the English language. (Complete أكمل)
كان ويليام بتلر ييتس واحدًا من أكثر …… الشعراء تأثيرًا …… في اللغة الإنجليزية. (أكمل)
4. Was W.B. Yeats one of the most influential poets in the English language? (Answer أجب)
هل كان ويليام بتلر ييتس من أكثر الشعراء تأثيراً في اللغة الإنجليزية؟ (اجب)
Yes, he was. نعم كان كذلك
5. When and where was he born? متى وأين ولد؟
Born 13th June 1865, in Dublin, Ireland.
6. W.B. Yeats was Born in 13th June 1865, in …..Dublin…., Ireland.
دبليو. ولد ييتس في 13 يونيو 1865 ، في… .. ….دبلن…. ، أيرلندا.
7. W.B. Yeats is the son of a well-known …..Irish painter….., وليام بتلر ييتس هو ابن .... الرسام ايرلندي....... المعروف،
8. What is W.B. Yeats's father's name? ما هو اسم والد ييتس؟
John Butler Yeats
9. W.B. Yeats was arguing that Irish culture should be free from……. English control and influence.
وليام بتلر ييتس كان يجادل بأن الثقافة الأيرلندية يجب أن تكون حرة من .... السيطرة والتأثير في اللغة الإنجليزية.
10. W.B. Yeats was arguing that Irish culture should be free from English control and influence. (True / false)
وليام بتلر ييتس كان يجادل بأن الثقافة الأيرلندية يجب أن تكون حرة من السيطرة والتأثير في اللغة الإنجليزية. (خطأ صحيح)
11. W.B. Yeats was arguing that Irish culture should be free from Irish control and influence. (True / false)
وليام بتلر ييتس كان يجادل بأن الثقافة الأيرلندية يجب أن تكون حرة من السيطرة والتأثير في اللغة الأيرلندية. (خطأ صحيح)
12. Name Two famous poems of W.B. Yeats. أذكر قصيدتين مشهورتين لـوليام بتلر ييتس.
   - 'Easter 1916',
   - 'Sailing to Byzantium'.
13. Famous poems include: 'Easter 1916', 'The Lake Isle of Innisfree', 'Sailing to Byzantium'.
تشمل القصائد الشهيرة: "عيد الفصح 1916" ، "بحيرة جزيرة إنيسفري" ، "الإبحار إلى بيزنطة".
(a. W.B. Yeats b. Nazik Al-Mala'ika)
14. W.B. Yeats Died in …….1939……. مات ييتس في …… 1939.
15. When did W.B. Yeats die? متى مات ييتس؟
in 1939
16. Where was W.B. Yeats buried? أين دفن ييتس ؟
in France
17. W.B. Yeats was buried in France. ييتس دُفن في ...... فرنسا.....
18. When was W.B. Yeats buried in France? متى تم دفنه في فرنسا؟
at the beginning of the Second World War. في بداية الحرب العالمية
19. Where was W.B. Yeats re-buried later? اين تم دفن ييتس لاحقا؟
in his homeland, Ireland. في وطنه أيرلندا.
20. W.B. Yeats later re-buried in his homeland, Ireland. أعيد دفن ييتس في وقت لاحق في وطنه، أيرلندا.

Ma'ruf al Rusafi معروف الرصافي

For the Sake of Our Homeland

في سبيل الوطن

Isn't it time to forget the hatred we have for others?
so that on the basis of brotherhood we can build?
أما آن أن تُنسى من القوم أضغانُ فيُبنى على أسِّ المؤاخاة بُنيانُ؟
Isn't it time to throw away weakness?
so that through cooperation our homeland will gain glory?
أما آن أن يُرمَى التخاذل جانبًا فتكسَبَ عزًّا بالتناصر أوطانُ؟

Why should we be enemies because of differences in religions?
When *enmity** in religion is aggression?
عَلامَ التعادي لاختلاف ديانةٍ؟! وإنَّ التعادي في الديانة عُدْوان

What harm if cooperation is our religion?
Countries would then *flourish** and all would be safe
وما ضرَّ لو كان التعاون ديننا فتعْمُرَ بُلْدان وتأمنَ قُطَّان

If *patriotic** unity brings us together
So what is it to us if religions are many?
إذا جمعتنا وحْدة وطنية فماذا علينا أن تَعدَّد أديان؟!

If the people are governed by these three
Language, homeland and the believe in Allah,
إذا القومُ عمَّتهم أمورٌ ثلاثة: لسان وأوطان وبالله إيمان

What belief then stands in the way of brotherhood,
Which is called for in the Bible and the Quran?
فأيُّ اعتقاد مانع من أخوَّةٍ بها قال إنجيلٌ كما قال قرآن؟!

For these two holy books were revealed by Allah
To his messengers only to make man happy
كتابان لم ينزلهما اللّه ربُّنا على رُسْله إلا ليسعد إنسان

He who comes forward in the name of religion
To call for division
Then his call is truly false
فَمَنْ قام باسْم الدين يدعو مفرقًا فدعواه في أصل الدِّيانةِ بهتان

Should we suffer by order of religion
When religion is happiness?
If so, then belief in such a religion is a fatal loss
أنشقى بأمر الدين وهو سعادة؟! إذن فاتِّباع الدين يا قومُ خُسران

But the *ignorance** of the ignorant leads them astray,
Open to every unproved saying
ولكنَّ جهلَ الجاهلين طحا بهم إلى كل قول لم يؤيِّد برهان

And they *roam** in the *desolate** region of falsehood
Like those who are *possessed** by Satan
فهاموا بتيهاءِ الأباطيل كالذي تخبَّطَهُ من شدة المسِّ شيطان



Ma'ruf al Rusafi

- Born in 1875.
  ولد عام 1875.
- his full name is Ma'ruf Abdul Ghani al Rusafi
  اسمه الكامل معروف عبد الغني الرصافي
- Born and raised in Baghdad.
  ولد ونشأ في بغداد.
- Worked as teacher most of his life.
  عمل كمدرس معظم حياته.
- A statue commemorating al Rusafi Stands in the square facing the Martyrs' Bridge.
  تمثال يخلد ذكرى الرصافي يقف في الساحة المواجهة لجسر الشهداء.
- He left many published works both in verse and prose.
  ترك العديد من الأعمال المنشورة على حد سواء في الابيات الشعرية والنثر.
- His collection of poems in 'Diwan al Rusafi' brought him wide recognition as a poet.
  حققت مجموعته الشعرية في "ديوان الرصافي" شهرة واسعة له كشاعر.
- In prose he also left many works on religion, women, sociology, philosophy, war, politics, and history.
  في النثر ، ترك أيضًا العديد من الأعمال في الدين والمرأة وعلم الاجتماع والفلسفة والحرب والسياسة والتاريخ.
- He died on 16th March
  توفي في 16 مارس

الكلمة	معناها	المعنى في الانكليزي	ترجمة
enmity	تعادي / عداوة	feelings of hatred towards somebody	مشاعر الكراهية تجاه شخص ما
flourish	تُعمر	to grow well; to be healthy and happy	ينمو بشكل جيد أن تكون بصحة جيدة وسعيدة
patriotic	وطني	having or expressing great love of your country	امتلاك أو التعبير عن حب كبير لبلدك
ignorance	جهل	a lack of knowledge or information about something	نقص المعرفة أو المعلومات حول شيء ما
roam	يهيم / يطوف	to travel around without any definite aim or direction	للتنقل دون أي هدف أو اتجاه محدد
desolate	تيهاء/مقفر / مهجور	empty and without people	فارغة وبدون ناس
possessed	ممسوس	to be controlled by an evil spirit	أن تكون تحت سيطرة روح شرير

❖ أسئلة القصيدة مهمة جداً

1 Read the poem aloud to your partner. The poem features lots of questions. What effect does this have on the way you read and Interpret It?

1. اقرأ القصيدة بصوت عالٍ لشريكك. القصيدة تحتوي على الكثير من الأسئلة. ما هو تأثير ذلك على طريقة قراءتك لها وتفسيرها؟

Isn't it time... its purpose is to slow down
What belief... the purpose of which is to negate or deny

أما آن ....الغرض منه الاستبطاء
أي اعتقاد ...... الغرض منه النفي

2 What are the main themes of the poems? ما هي الموضوعات(الأفكار) الرئيسية للقصائد؟
What message Is the poet trying to convey? ما هي الرسالة التي يحاول الشاعر إيصالها؟

The themes are الأفكار الأساسية هي

1. The poet urged fraternity and cooperation, stating their benefit in society, rejecting discrimination and intolerance, and demonstrating their harm
2. The poet states that the origin in religion is the call to brotherhood, not enmity
3. The poet invites countrymen to do good to their homeland.

1. حث الشاعر على التأخي والتعاون وبيان فائدتهما في المجتمع ونبذ التفرقة والتعصب وبيان ضررها
2. بيان الشاعر أن الأصل في الدين هو الدعوة الى الأخوة لا العداوة
3. دعوة الشاعر أبناء الوطن الى الاحسان الى وطنهم

The messages the poet is trying to convey are الرسائل التي يحاول الشاعر نقلها هي
1. Our Unity factors are more than what divides us.
2. The nation's strength and prosperity are due to the unity and adherence of its sons.

1. عوامل وحدتنا أكثر من عوامل تفرقتنا
2. قوة الوطن وازدهاره بوحدة أبنائه وتمسكهم

3 What Is your response to 'For the Sake, of Our Homeland'? Will you remember this poem? Explain your reasons.

ما هو ردك على "في سبيل وطننا"؟ هل ستذكر هذه القصيدة؟ اشرح أسبابك.

My response is that it is one of the best poems that I've ever read. جوابي أنها من أفضل القصائد التي قرأتها على الإطلاق
Yes, I will. نعم سأتذكر
Because The poet urged the citizens of the nation to adhere to the unity factors to serve the nation
لأن الشاعر حث ابناء الوطن على التمسك بعوامل الوحدة لخدمة الوطن

❖ أسئلة عن الشاعر معروف الرصافي

1. When was Ma'ruf al Rusafi born? (Answer أجب) متى ولد معروف الرصافي؟ (أجب)
   in 1875.

2. Ma'ruf al Rusafi was born in …….1875 ……. (complete) ولد معروف الرصافي ……. 1875 ……. (اكمل)

3. Ma'ruf al Rusafi was born in 1785. (True/ False) معروف الرصافي من مواليد 1785. (صحيح / خطأ)

4. Ma'ruf al Rusafi was born in 1875. (True/ False) معروف الرصافي من مواليد 1875. (صحيح / خطأ)

5. What is Ma'ruf al Rusafi's full name? (Answer) ما هو اسم معروف الرصافي بالكامل؟ (اجب)
   Ma'ruf Abdul Ghani al Rusafi معروف عبد الغني الرصافي

6. Ma'ruf al Rusafi was born and raised in Basra. (True/ False) معروف الرصافي ولد وترعرع في البصرة. (خطأ صحيح)

7. Ma'ruf al Rusafi was born and raised in Baghdad. (True/ False) معروف الرصافي ولد وترعرع في بغداد. (خطأ صحيح)

8. Ma'ruf al Rusafi was born and raised in ……Baghdad….. (complete)
   ولد معروف الرصافي ترعرع(نشأ) في ……. بغداد ….. (اكمل)

9. Where was Ma'ruf al Rusafi born and raised? (Answer) أين ولد ونشأ معروف الرصافي؟ (اجب)
   Baghdad بغداد

10. Ma'ruf al Rusafi Worked as a teacher most of his life. (complete)
    معروف الرصافي عمل مدرسًا معظم حياته. (اكمل)

11. A statue commemorating al Rusafi Stands in the square facing the Martyrs' Bridge. (complete)
    تمثال لإحياء ذكرى الرصافي يقف في الساحة المواجهة لجسر الشهداء. (اكمل)

12. Ma'ruf al Rusafi left many published works both in ….. verse …… and …..prose…..(complete)
    ترك معروف الرصافي العديد من الأعمال المنشورة في كل من…. .. الشعر الحر …… و…. .. نثر… .. (اكمل)

13. What brought him wide recognition as a poet? (Answer)
    ما الذي جعله يحظى بتقدير واسع كشاعر؟ (اجب)
    His collection of poems 'Diwan al Rusafi' مجموعته الشعرية "ديوان الرصافي".

14. Ma'ruf al Rusafi's collection of poems in…… 'Diwan al Rusafi'……. brought him wide recognition as a poet. (complete) مجموعة قصائد معروف الرصافي في …… "ديوان الرصافي"……. جلبت له شهرة واسعة كشاعر. (اكمل)

15. In prose he left many works on religion, women, sociology, philosophy, war, politics, and history.
    (a. W.B. Yeats b. Ma'ruf al Rusafi)
    في النثر ترك العديد من الأعمال في الدين والمرأة وعلم الاجتماع والفلسفة والحرب والسياسة والتاريخ.

16. Ma'ruf al Rusafi died on ….16th March…. (complete) توفي معروف الرصافي في … 16 مارس …. (اكمل)

17. When did Ma'ruf al Rusafi die? (Answer) متى مات معروف الرصافي؟ (اجب)
    16th March 16 مارس

Nazik Al-Mala'ika
نازك الملائكة

Love Song for Words

أغنية حب للكلمات

Why do we fear words
when they have been rose-palmed hands,
*fragrant**, passing gently over our cheeks,
and glasses of *heartening** wine
sipped, one summer, by thirsty lips?

فيمَ نخشَى الكلماتْ
وهي أحيانًا أكُفٌّ من ورودِ
بارداتِ العِطْرِ مرّتْ عذْبةً فوق خدودِ
وهي أحيانًا كؤوسٌ من رحيقٍ مُنْعِشِ
رشَفَتْها، ذاتَ صيفٍ، شَفَةٌ في عَطَشِ؟

Why do we fear words
when among them are words like unseen bells,
whose *echo** *announces** in our troubled lives
the coming of a period of *enchanted** dawn,
*drenched** in love, and life?
So why do we fear words?

فيمَ نخشى الكلماتْ؟
إنّ منها كلماتٍ هي أجراسٌ خفيّهْ
رَجعُها يُعلِن من أعمارنا المنفعلاتْ
فترةً مسحورةَ الفجرِ سخيّهْ
قَطَرَتْ حسّا وحبًّا وحياةْ
فلماذا نحنُ نخشى الكلماتْ؟

[...]
Why do we fear words?
If their *thorns** have once *wounded** us,
then they have also wrapped their arms around our necks
and *shed** their sweet *scent** upon our *desires**.
If their letters have *pierced** us
and their face turned *callously** from us
Then they have also left us with an *oud** in our hands
And tomorrow they will shower us with life.
So, pour us two full glasses of words!

فيمَ نخشى الكلماتْ؟
إن تكنْ أشواكها بالأمسِ يومًا جرَحتْنا
فلقد لفّتْ ذراعَيْها على أعناقنا
وأراقتْ عِطْرَها الحُلوَ على أشواقنا
إن تكن أحرفُها قد وَخَزَتْنا
ولَوَتْ أعناقَها عنّا ولم تَعْطِفْ علينا
فلكم أبقت وعودًا في يَدَينا
وغدًا تغمُرُنا عِطْرًا وورِدًا وحياةْ
آهِ فاملأ كأسَتيْنا كلِماتْ

Tomorrow we will build ourselves a dream-nest of words,
high, with *ivy** *trailing** from its letters.
We will *nourish** its buds with poetry
and water its flowers with words.
We will build a *balcony** for the *timid** rose
with *pillars** made of words,
and a cool hall *flooded** with deep shade,
*guarded** by words.

Nazik Al-Mala'ika

- A highly influential Iraqi poet, famous for being one of the first poets in Arabic to use free verse.
  شاعرة عراقية مؤثر للغاية، اشتهرت بكونها من أوائل الشعراء باللغة العربية الذين استخدموا الشعر الحر.
- Born 23rd August 1923, in Baghdad.
  من مواليد 23 آب 1923 في بغداد.
- The daughter of parents who were also poets.
  ابنة أبوين كانا شعراء أيضًا.
- Taught as a professor in several universities, including Baghdad, Basra and Kuwait.
  درست كأستاذة في عدة جامعات منها بغداد والبصرة والكويت.
- Worked hard to promote women's rights and political freedom.
  عملت بجد لتعزيز حقوق المرأة والحرية السياسية.
- Famous poems include: 'Cholera', 'For Prayer and Revolution', 'Revolt Against the Sun'.
  تتضمن القصائد الشهيرة: "الكوليرا" ، "للصلاة والثورة" ، "ثورة ضد الشمس."
- Died and was buried in Cairo in 2007.
  توفيت ودفنت بالقاهرة عام 2007.

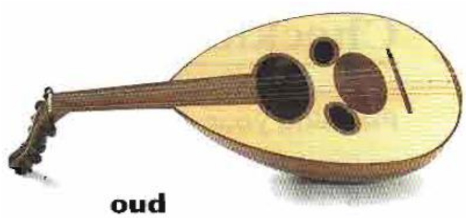


في غدٍ نبني لنا عُشّ روًى من كلماتْ
سامقًا يعترش اللبلابُ في أحرُفِهِ
سنُذيبُ الشّعْرَ في زُخْرُفِهِ
وسنَرْوي زهرَهُ بالكلماتْ
وسنَبْني شُرْفةً للعطْرِ والوردِ الخجولِ
ولها أعمدةٌ من كلماتْ
وممرًّا باردًا يسْبَحُ في ظلٍّ ظليلِ
حَرَسَتْهُ الكلماتْ

Our life we have dedicated* as a prayer
To whom will we pray... but to words?

عُمْرُنا نحنُ نذرناهُ صلاةْ
فلمن سوف نصلّيها... لغير الكلماتْ؟

الكلمة	معناها	المعنى في الانكليزي	ترجمة
fragrant	معطر / باردات	perfumed, nice-smelling	معطر ورائحة طيبة
heartening	منعش / مشجع	encouraging, making you feel happier	مشجع، يجعلك تشعر بالسعادة
echo	صدى صوت / رَجعُها	sound that is reflected back to you	الصوت الذي ينعكس عليك
announces	يعلن	says, introduces	يقول، يقدم
enchanted	مسحورة	magic, beautiful	سحر جميل
drenched	قَطَرَتْ / منقوع	soaked, made completely wet	غارقة، مبللة تمامًا
thorns	أشواك	small, sharp, pointed parts of a plant	أجزاء صغيرة وحادة ومدببة من النبات
wounded	يجرح / جرَحتْنا	hurt, injured	مجروح، مصاب
shed	أراقتْ	dropped	إسقاط
scent	عِطْرَها	smell, perfume	الرائحة والعطور
desires	اشواقنا	hopes, wants	آمال، يريد
pierced	وَخَزَتْنا	made a small hole in	صنع ثقبًا صغيرًا في
callously	بقسوة / بدون عطف	in a cruel, unfeeling way	بطريقة قاسية وعديمة الشعور
oud	العود	musical instrument, played mainly in the middle East	آلة موسيقية، تُعزف بشكل رئيسي في الشرق الأوسط
ivy	لبلاب / نبات متسلق للجدران	climbing plant with dark, shiny leaves	نبات التسلق بأوراق لامعة داكنة
trailing	يعترش / متدلي	hanging down	يتدلى
nourish	يروي / يغذي	feed	يغذي
balcony	شُرْفة	an outside platform from an upper room in a building	منصة خارجية من غرفة علوية في مبنى
timid	خجول	shy, nervous	خجول وعصبي
pillars	أعمدة	tall round stones used to support a building	حجارة مستديرة طويلة تستخدم لدعم المبنى
flooded	يسْبَحُ / مغمور ب	covered by	مغمور ب
guarded	محروس	protected	محمي
dedicated	نذرناهُ / ينذر/ مخصصة	given our time and effort to	اعطينا وقتنا وجهدنا ل





❖ الأسئلة التالية خاصة بالقصيدة مهم جداً

1 Read the poem aloud to your partner. Which lines do you think sound most song-like, most musical? Why do you think that is?

اقرأ القصيدة بصوت عالٍ لشريكك. ما هي السطور التي تعتقد أنها أكثر شبهاً بالأغنية، والأكثر موسيقية؟ لماذا تعتقد ذلك؟

Why do we fear words
and shed* their sweet scent* upon our desires*.
Other lines as well

The reason is that the writer is trying to harmonize with the emotions and feelings of the herself.

والسبب هو أن الكاتبة تحاول أن تنسجم مع عواطفها ومشاعرها.

2 What question is repeated in 'Love Song for Words'? What Is the effect of this repetition?

ما هو السؤال الذي يتكرر في أغنية الحب للكلمات؟ ما هو أثر هذا التكرار؟

- Why do we fear words? لماذا نخشى الكلمات؟
- Effect of the repetition: Emphasizes not being afraid of expressing words and expressing wishes and ideas.

أثر التكرار: يؤكد على عدم الخوف من التعبير عن الكلمات والتعبير عن الاماني والأفكار

3 Find as many examples of personification as you can.

جد أكبر عدد ممكن من الأمثلة على التجسيد.

- when they have been rose-palmed hands, as if words have hands.
- then they have also wrapped their arms around our necks. As if words have arms just like humans
- and their face turned callously* from us. As if words have faces and ignored us callously.
- We will build a balcony* for the timid* rose. The rose is given human characteristics (shy)
- guarded* by words. As if words are alive and can protect our hopes.
- وهي أحيانًا أكُفٌّ من ورودٍ، كما لو أن الكلمات لها أيادي.
- فلقد لفّتْ ذراعَيْها على أعناقنا. كما لو أن الكلمات لها أذرع مثل البشر
- وَلَوَتْ أعناقَها عنّا ولم تَعْطِفْ علينا. وكأن الكلمات لها وجوه وتجاهلتنا بقسوة.
- وسنَبْني شُرْفةً للعطْرِ والوردِ الخجولِ. أعطيت الوردة صفات بشرية (خجولة)
- حَرَسَتْهُ الكلماتْ. كما لو كانت الكلمات حية ويمكنها حماية آمالنا.

4 Find one example of. What effect does it have on the way you read the line?

ابحث عن مثال واحد عن الصفير. ما هو تأثير ذلك على طريقة قراءة السطر؟

sibilance "s" is repeated
and shed* their sweet scent* upon our desires*.
The effect: Adds rhythm and musicality to a piece of text. التأثير: يضيف الإيقاع والموسيقى إلى جزء من النص
Also harmonize with the emotions and feelings of the herself.

وأيضا انسجام مع انفعالاتها وأحاسيسها.

5 This is free verse, but does that mean there is no rhyme in the poem?

هذه شعر حر، لكن هل هذا يعني عدم وجود قافية في القصيدة؟

No, it doesn't mean that there is no rhyme. لا، هذا لا يعني أنه لا يوجد قافية

6 What do you think of the poem's final question? Can you answer it?

ما رأيك في السؤال الأخير للقصيدة؟ هل تستطيع الاجابة عليه؟

I think that the Writer tries to say that words protect(guard) our wishes and hopes.
And my answer is that we can't live without our wishes and ideas because they are important.

أعتقد أن الكاتبة تحاول أن تقول إن الكلمات تحمي (تحمي) أمانينا وآمالنا.
وجوابي هو أننا لا نستطيع العيش بدون أمانينا وافكارنا لأنها مهمة.

أسئلة عن الشاعرة نازك الملائكة

1. Who was Nazik Al-Mala'ika? من هي نازك الملائكة؟
a highly influential Iraqi poet? شاعرة عراقية مؤثرة للغاية؟

2. Was Nazik Al-Mala'ika a highly influential Iraqi poet? (Answer)
Yes, she was. نعم كانت كذلك
هل كانت نازك الملائكة شاعرة عراقية شديدة التأثير؟ (اجب)

3. Nazik Al-Mala'ika was a highly influential Iraqi poet. (True/False)
كانت نازك الملائكة شاعرة عراقية ذات تأثير كبير. (خطأ صحيح)

4. Nazik Al-Mala'ika was famous for being one of the first poets in Arabic to use free verse. (True/ False)
اشتهرت نازك الملائكة بكونها من أوائل الشعراء في اللغة العربية الذين استخدموا الشعر الحر. (خطأ صحيح)

5. Nazik Al-Mala'ika was famous for being one of the first poets in Arabic to use prose. (True/ False)
اشتهرت نازك الملائكة بكونها من أوائل شعراء اللغة العربية النثر. (خطأ صحيح)

6. When and where was Nazik Al-Mala'ika born? متى وأين ولدت نازك الملائكة؟
23rd August 1923, in Baghdad. 23 آب 1923، في بغداد.

7. Nazik Al-Mala'ika was born in 23rd August 1923, in Baghdad. (complete)
ولدت نازك الملائكة في 23 آب 1923 في بغداد. (اكمل)

8. Were Nazik Al-Mala'ika's parents poets as well? (Answer) هل كان والدا نازك الملائكة من الشعراء أيضا؟ (أجب)
Yes, they were. نعم، كانوا كذلك.

9. Nazik Al-Mala'ika's parents were also poets. (True/False) كان والدا نازك الملائكة من الشعراء أيضًا. (خطأ صحيح)

10. Nazik Al-Mala'ika's parents weren't also poets. (True/False) لم يكن والدا نازك الملائكة من الشعراء أيضًا. (خطأ صحيح)

11. Nazik Al-Mala'ika's parents were also ....poets...... (complete)
كان والدا نازك الملائكة...... شعراء .... أيضا (اكمل)

12. Nazik Al-Mala'ika taught as a professor in several universities, including Baghdad, Basra and Kuwait. (complete) درست نازك الملائكة كأستاذة جامعية في عدة جامعات منها بغداد والبصرة والكويت. (اكمل)

13. Where did Nazik Al-Mala'ika teach as a professor? (Answer)(اجب) أين درست نازك الملائكة كأستاذة جامعية؟
Baghdad, Basra and Kuwait. بغداد والبصرة والكويت.

14. Nazik Al-Mala'ika Worked hard to promote women's rights and political freedom. (complete)
نازك الملائكة عملت بجد لتعزيز حقوق المرأة والحرية السياسية. (اكتمال)

15. Name two Famous poems of Nazik Al-Mala'ika! (Answer) اذكر قصيدتين مشهورتين لنازك الملائكة! (جب)
- 'Cholera',
- 'Revolt Against the Sun'.

16. Famous poems include: 'Cholera', 'For Prayer and Revolution', 'Revolt Against the Sun'.
(a. W.B. Yeats b. Nazik Al-Mala'ika) تتضمن القصائد الشهيرة: "الكوليرا"، "للصلاة والثورة"، "ثورة ضد الشمس".

17. When did Nazik Al-Mala'ika die? (Answer) متى ماتت نازك الملائكة؟ (اجب)
In 2007

18. Where was Nazik Al-Mala'ika buried? (Answer) أين دفنت نازك الملائكة؟ (اجب)
In Cairo

19. Nazik Al-Mala'ika Died and was buried in Cairo in 2007. (complete)
توفيت نازك الملائكة ودفنت في القاهرة عام 2007. (اكمل)

ثم بحمد الله

تمنياتي بالموفقية